the repaft approaches, he fends them a third paper, with a fervant to conduct them, and to acquaint them how impatient he is to fee themAfter the company are affembled, and when they are about to fit down to table, the mafter of the houfe takes a cup of gold or filver, and, lifting it up with both his hands, falutes that perfon who of all the company holds the greateft rank on account of his employment : he then leaves the hail, and proceeds to the outer court, where, after having turned himfelf towards the fouth, and offered wine to the tutelary fpirits who prefide over the houfe, he pours it out in form of a libation. After this ceremony, every one approaches the table deftined for him. The guefts, before they fit down, wafte above an hour in paying compliments; and the mafter of the houfe hạs no fooner done with one, than he begins with another.-Have they occafion to drink, compliments mult begin afrefh : the perfon of greateft diftinction drinks firft ; the reft, afterwards; and all falute the mafter of.the houfe. Although their cups are very fmall, and fcarce deeper than the fhell of a walnut, they however drink a great deal, but flowly and at feveral times. When they begin to grow merry, they difcufs various topics; and they fometimes

276 General description
play at fmall games, in which thoie who lofe are condemned to drink.

Comedies and farces are often reprefented during thefe repafts; but they are always intermixed with the moft wretched and frightful mufic. Their inftruments are bafons either of brafs or iron, the found of which is harf and fhrill; drums made of buffalo's hide, which they beat fometimes with the foot, and fometimes with fticks ; and flutes, that have a moft melancholy and plaintive found : the voices of the muficians have nearly the fame harmony. The actors in thefe domeftic comedies, are boys between the age of twelve and fifteen. Their manager conducts them from province to province; and they are every where confidered as the dregs of the people. Thefe youths have moft aftonifhing memories; they know by heart forty or fifty comedies, the fhortef of which generally lafts five hours. They carry their theatrical apparatus along with them, together with a volume contdining their comedies which they prefent; and when a picce has been fixed on, they can immediately perform it, without any preparation.

About the middle of the entertainment, one of the performers goes round to all the tables,
and begs fome fmall reward from each of the guefts; the fervants of the houfe do the fame, and carry to their mafters whatever money they receive: a new repaft is then difplayed before the company, which is deftined for their domeftics.

The end of thefe entertainments is generally fuited to the beginning. The guefts praife in detail the excellence of the difhes and the politenefs and generofity of theirdhoft, who, on his part, makes a number of excufes, and begs pardon, with many low bows, for not having treated them according to their merit.

The Tonquinefe phyficians pretend that they can difcover the greater part of difeafes, by the beating of the pulfe alone, which they feel in three parts on each fide of the body.-By the pulfe of the right wrift, they know thofe which affect the lungs; by that of the veins where we ufually let blood, they judge of the ftate of the lower belly; and by that of the temple, thofe which have their feat in the reins: the pulfe of the left wrift difcovers to them the fate of the heart ; that of the arm-pit, the condition of the liver; and laftly, that of the left temple gives them farther infight into maladies of the reins.

278 GENERAL DESCRIPTION
Thefe phyficians, for the moft part, ufe nothing but roots, or fimples, in the compofition of their medicines: however, for head-aches, fevers and dyfenteries, they commonly prefcribe the juice of a certain fruit, which is faid to have a wonderful effect in the cure of thefe diforders. This fruit refembles a pomegranate, and is called miengou. The tree which produces it generally grows in hedges, and rifes to the height of the fig-tree, which it is very like; its wood is foft and fpongy, its branches are pliant and delicate, and its leaves are almoft round and of a pale-green colour. During wet weather, a tart, milky fugar diftils from it, which the peafants collect with great care in fmall porcelain veffels, where it foon hardens. With regard to the fruit, it refembles, as we have faid, a pomegranate; however, it is longer, and fmaller towards the end, which is hard, and difficult to be broken; when it has attained to a certain degtee of maturity, it is gathered and a kind of cyder made of it, without any mixture of water. This liquor may be kept a long time, and is ufed with fuccefs in thofe difeafes which are occafioncd by exceffive heats.

The purple fever is a difeafe viery đangerous in Europe; but few diẹ of it in Tong-king.-

The Tonquinefe treat it in the following manner: they take the pith of a certain reed, dip it in oil, and apply it fucceffively to all the purple fpots on the body: the flefh then burfs with a report as loud as that of a piftol; and after the corrupted blood has been fqueezed out, they finifh the cure by rubbing the wounds with a little ginger. This remedy muft be very painful; but we are affured that its efficacy is certain.

People are very often bit by ferpents at Tongking; but it is eafy to cure them. A fmall fone is found there, much refembling a cheftnut, the virtue of which is almoft miraculous: it is called ferpent's fone. When one has been bit by any venomous reptile, the blood is preffed out, and this beneficent ftone applied to the wound. It at firlt adheres clofely to the part affected, and gradually fucks out the poifon; but when it becomes impregnated with it, it falls off. It is then carefully wahed in milk or water in which lime has been diluted, and applied a fecond time tothe wound, from which it again detaches itfelf in the like manner, after having extracted all the poifon. In lefs.than an hour, the patient finds himfelf without any fever, and quite free from pain.

## T4 Bleeding

280 General description
Blesdint 尞 is not much ufed in Tong-king: this is the laft refource of the phyficians; and they never have recourfe to it, until they are well affured of the inefficacy of other remedies. The Tonquinefe perhaps have not fo much occafion for frequent bleeding as the Europeans: their blood is naturally poorer, and their exercifes are various atd more violent ; at the fame time, they make fo great ufe of herbs and roots, that they are much lefs fubject to thofe difeafes which are occafioned in Europe by the abundance and corruption of the humours: befides, when the Tonquinefe feel themfelves heavy or oppreffed, they adminiftes a remedy, the effect of which is equally fpeedy and falutary. This remedy is as follows.-There is found in the fea which wathes the fhores of the ifland of IHai-nan, in the neighbourhood of Tong-king, a fpecics of crabs which have the property of purifying the blood. This animal being caft on fhore by the waves, length of time ${ }_{3}$ becomes petrified, withoyfilofing any thing of its natural figure : whent attains that degree of hardnefs whif is condinon to ftones, it is reduced to powde and $\frac{1}{6}$ aniftered to the patient in water wingoret therding to his

## OF CHINA. <br> 581

circumftances, or as his cafe is metrers dangerous. The fame remedy is ufed alfo with fuccefs for wounds, fevers, and dyfenteries.

## CHAP. III.

## TONG-KING CONYINUED.

Religion, Agriculture and Animals.

THE religion of the Tonquinefe is a mixture of the Chinefe worfhip and other fuperftitions.-Some of them believe the immortality of the foul; others confine this privilege to the fouls of the juft only. They worfhip fpirits, with which they imagine the air to be filled, admit the doctrine of tranfmigration, believe the world to be eternal, and acknowledge one fupreme being. Men of learning, and the literati, follow the doctrine of Confucius, and conform to the cuftoms of the people in all their religiots cercmonies. There are few cities in Tong-king in which one temple, at leaft, has not been raifed to "Confucius. The ftatue of this celebrated philofopher is always
feen thete in the moft honourable place, furrounded by thofe of his difciples, who are confidered as fo many demi-gods : chey are placed around the altar, in attitudes which mark the refpect and veneration they formerly had for their mafter. All the magiffrates of the city affemble there on the days of new and full moon, and perform a few ceremonies, which confift in offering prefents on the altar, burning perfumes, and making a number of genuflections.

Every year, at both the equinoxes, they offer up folemn facrifices, at which all the literati are obliged to affift. The prief, who is commonly one of thofe mandarins called literati, prepares himfelf for this ceremony, by fafting and abfinence : the evening before the facrifice is made, he provides the rice and fruits which are to be offered, and difpofes in proper order on the tables of the temple every thing that is to be burnt in honour of Confucius. His altar is ornamented with the richeft filk ftuffs, and his fatue is placed on it, with feveral fmall tablets, on which his name is infcribed in characters of gold. The prieft tries the animals intended for the facrifice, by pouring warm wine into their ears: if they thake their heads, they are judged proper to be facrificed; but if
they make no motion, they are rejected. ${ }^{\text {Plefore }}$ they are killed, which is done in the evening, the prieft bends his body very low; after which, he cuts their throats, and referves their blood and the hair of their ears for the next morning.

On the day of the ceremony, the prieft repairs early in the morning to the temple, where, after a number of genuflections, he invites the fpirit of Confucius to come and receive the homage and offerings of the literati, while the reft of the minifters light wax-candles, and throw perfumes into fires that are prepared at the door of the temple. As foon as the prieft approaches the altar, a mafter of ceremonies cries out, with a loud voice, Let the blood and bair of the flaugbtered beafts be prefinted. The prieft then raifes with both his hands a veffel containing the blood and hair; and the mafter of the ceremonies fays, Let this blood and bair be buried. On thefe words, all the affiftants rife up, and the pricf, followed by his minifters, carries the veffel, with much gravity and refpect, to a kind of court which is before the temple, where they inter the blood and hair of the animals. After this ceremony, the flefh of the victims is uncovered, and the mafter of the ceremonies fays, Let the fpirit of the great Confucius defcend! The prieft immediately

2月4 GENERAL DESCRIPTION
diately lifts up a vellel frled with firituous liquor, which He fprinkles over a human figure made of ftraw, at the fame time pronnuncing thefe words: Thy virtues, O, Confugius! ure great, admirable aind excellent.-If kings govern the ir fubjeuts with cquity, it is only by the alfftance of thy laws and incomtarable ductrine. We offer up this facrifice to thee; and our oficring is pure. May thy Spirit, then, come down amons us, and rejoice us by its prefence. When this ppeech is ended, the prief takes a piece of filk, offers it to the fpirit of Confucius, and afterwards burns it in a brazen urn, faying, with a loud :oice, Since the formation of non, until this day, who is be amang them, wello buth been able to furpafs, or even equal the perfections of Covfucrus ${ }^{2}$ O, Covrucius! all that we offer thee, is unworthy of thee: the tafte and finell of thefe migats bave nothing exquyte; but we offer them to thee, that thy fpirit may bear ws. This fpeech being finifhed, the prieft drinks the liquor, while one of his minifiers addre.Tes this prayer to Confucius; We bave made thefe offerings to thee with pleafure; and we are perfuaded, that thou wilt grant us every kind of good, favour and bonour. The prieft then diftributes among the affiftants the flefh of the facrifices; and thofe who eat of it, believe, that Confucius

## Of CHINA.

285
Confucius will load them with bleffings, and preferve them from every evil. At length, they terminate the facrifice, by re-conducting the fpirit of the philofopher to the place from which it is fuppofed to have defcended.

On the firft day of every new year, the Tonquinefe celebrate a folemn feaft in honour of the manes of thofe who during their lives performed illufriousactions, or diftinguifhed themfelves by their courage and bravery, even when fighting againft their country. More than forty thoufand foldiers are drawn up in a vaft plain, to which all the princes and mandarins are ordered to repair, and where the king himfelf attends them. After facrificing, they burn incenfe before a number of altars, which are infcribed with the names of the generals and great men in commemoration of whom they are then affembled. The king, princes, and all the grandees of the court, afterwards incline themfelves before each of the altare, excepting thofe which contain the names of the rebellious generals, againt which the king difcharges five arrows. The whole ceremony concludes with the firing of cannon and by three volleys of mufquetry, in order to put to Hight all thefe fouls.

There

Thefe people have three particular idols, to which they render the molt fuperftitious homage : the firft is the Spirit of the Kitchen, the fecond, the Mafter of Arts, and the third, the Lord of the Place where they refiaie. The Spirit of the Kitchen takes its origin from a tale preferved by tradition in the country: 'A woman,' fay they, ' having formerly feparated from her ' hufband on account of fome difcontent, mar${ }^{6}$ ried a fecond time. This action gave her for${ }^{6}$ mer hufband fo much uneafinefs, that the ' unfortunate wretch put an end to his days by 6 throwing himfelf into a large fire. The report c of this event was no fooner fpread, than the ' unfaithful fpoufe, touched with repentarice, 6 went and expiatecl her fault by throwing her-- felf into the fame fire which had confumed - her hufband. Her fecond hufband, having 6 been informed of it, haftened thither alfo; but - having found his wife reduced to afhes, he ' was fo much affected with grief, that he rufhed 4 into the middle of the fame fire, and was de' Atroyed in an inftant.' - Such is the crigin of this idol. This fpirit is believed to animate three ftones of which the Tonquinefe form their hearth; and thcy wornip thefe three ftones on the firft day of cvery new year.

The idol called Mafter of Arrts is the image of one of the literati, but different from that of Confucius, whom the people of Tong-king believe to have been the moft ingenious, learned, and wifeft of mankind. Merchants invoke it before they buy or fell; firhermen, before they throw their nets into the fea; and artifts, before they begin any work.

The idol called Lord of the Plact where they refide is no lefs reverenced than the preceding. When any one intends to build a houfe, he begins by confidering, that the ground upon which he builds is not fo much the property of the king, but that it may have fome other mafter, who after his death will preferve the fame right as he enjoyed during his life. He afterwards fends for a magician, who by beat of drum invites the foul of the deceafed mafter to come and take up its abode under a fmall hut, which has been prepared for it, and where it is prefented with bits of gilt paper, perfumes, and finall tables covered with dainties. The intention of this ceremony is to engage the ancient proprietor to fuffer a new tenant in his field.

Some of the Tonquinefe are fo fuperftitious, that before they undertake any journey, they never fail to infpect the feet of a chicken:

288 GENERAL DESCR:PTION
others, after they have fet out, fuddenly return, becaufe they have fneezed once; had they the misfortune to fneeze twice, they would think themfelves obliged to double their pace, and to return with the greateft hafte poffible.
There are fome who divide the earth into ten parts, and who from time to time make a profound reverence to each : others divide it into five equal portions, the fifth of which is fuppofed to be in the middle, and they wear different colours when they adore any of thefe parts. When they pay their homage to the north, they drefs themfelves in black, and ufe only black utenfils in their facrifices; they clothe themfelves in red when they adore the fouth; in green, when they facrifice to the eaft; in white, when they invoke the weft; and in yellow, when they pay their adorations to the middle part.

When a Tonquinefe is about to purchafe a field, undertake a journey, or marry one of his children, he goes and confults a conjurer, who pretends to be blind, in order to let him know that he hears and fees nothing but truth: before he gives an anfwer, he takes a book; but he opens it only half, as if he were afraid of fuffering prophane eyes to fee what it,contains.

After

After having afked the age of the perfon who comes to confult him, he throws into the air two fmall pieces of copper, on which are engraven, on one fide only, certain cabaliftical figures or characters. If, when the pieces fall to the ground, the figures are turned towards the earth, it prefages misfortune ; but if, on the contrary, they are turned towards the heavens, the omen is happy. This manner of fortunetelling is very common among the Tonquinefe.

There are other magicians, who are only confulted for the cure of difcafes.-If the conjurer announces that the difeafe proceeds from fpirits, they call them wicked genii, and fhut them up in earthen vafes; if it comes from the devil, they invite the father of liars to a grand feaft, which is given at the expence of the fick perfon's family; they affign him the moft honourable place, pray to him, invoke him, and offer him prefents; but if the difeafe does not abate, they load him with injuries, and fire twenty or thirty mulkets to drive him from the houfe. If it is the god of the fea who has occafioned the diftemper, they repair to the banks of fome river, where they offer up facrifices to appeafe him, and intreat him to quit the fick perfon's chamber and return to the waters. However, the fick Vol. I,

U perfon

## 200* GENERAE DESCRIPTION

perfon finds himfelf no better; and the magician takes his leave, loaded with gold and prefents.

Tong-king has its Miao-tfé, as well as China. Thefe are favage and ignorant mountaineers, who, having fhaken off the yoke of every nation, have retired to inacceffible mountains, where they lead a life much refembling that of thofe ferocious wild beafts which inhabit the fame rocks with them. They form a kind of republic, of which their prieft is the head. This chief has devifed a particular fyltem of religion and rites, which have no relation with thore of the Tonquinefe. It is generally in the houfes of the priefts, that their gods deliver oracles. A great noife announces their arrival. Thefe mountaineers, who in waiting for them pafs the time in drinking and dancing, immediately put a ftop to their diverfions, and fend forth loud thouts of joy, which are more like howlings than acclamations : Father / fay they, addreffing themfelves to their principal god, art thou already come? A voice then anfwers, Be of good cheer, my cbildren, eat, drink and rejoice; it is I who procure you all thofe advantages which you enjoy. After thefe words, to which they liften with filence, they again return to their pleafures.
pleafures. The gods however become thirfty in their turn, and afk for fomething to drink; vafes ornamented with flowers are immediately prepared, and the prieft receives them to carry them to the gods; for he is the only perfon who is permitted to approach, or converfe with them.

One of thefe gods is reprefented with a pale vifage, a bald head, and an unlucky countenance, which infpires horror. This deity never attends thofe affemblies with the reft, to receive the homage of his worfhippers, becaufe he is continually employed in conducting the fouls of the dead to the other world. It fometimes happens, that this god prevents a foul from quitting the country, efpecially if it be that of a young man; he then plunges it into a lake, where it remains until it is purified. If this foul is not tractable, and refifts the will of the god, he falls in a paffion, tears it to pieces, and throws it into another lake, where it remains without hopes of ever being liberated.

The paradife of thefe mountaineers hold forth nothing very inviting. The common opinion is, that a great quantity of large trees are found there, which diftil a kind of gum, with which the fouls are nourifhed; together with

292 GENERAI DESCRIPTION
delicious honey, and fifh of a prodigious fize. They imagine that apes are alfo placed there to amule the dead; and an eagle, fo large, that his extended wings fhelter all paradife from the heat of the fun.

Tong-king prefents a fertile roil, under a healthful and temperate climate. Befides the rice common to the reft of India, the Tonquinefe cultivate five other kinds, which are peculiar to their country. The firft is the fmall rice, the grain of which is long, thin and tranfparent ; it is accounted the mof delicate, and is generdly the only kind which the phyficians allow their patients. The fecond is the loni, thick rice, the form of which is round. The third is the red rice; it is fo called becaufe its grain is covered with a reddifh-coloured pellicle. Thefe three kinds of rice require much water, and never grow but in lands that are frequently overflowed. The $d r y$ i ice, which is of two kinds, grows in a dry foil, and has no occafion for any whater but what falls from the heavens. Thefe two laft kinds produce a grain as white as fnow, and are the principal articles of their trade with' China. They are never cultivated but on the hills and mountains, where they are fown in the fame manner as our wheat, about the end
of December, or beginning of January, at which time the rainy feafon ends. The dry rice is generally three months on the ground, and is very productive.

Father Horta thinks that the culture of thefe two kinds of rice might eafily fucceed in France: ' In $176_{5}$,' fays he, ' I feveral times traverfed ' the mountains of Tong-king, where rice is ' fown : they are exceedingly high, and the ' temperature of the air there is cold. I ob' ferved, in the month of January, that the rice 4 was very green, and more than three inches - in height, although the mercury in one of ' Reaumur's thermometers ftood only four de${ }^{6}$ grees above the freczing point. I have fince - fown in the Ifle of France fome of this grain, ' and it produced more than any fpecies of the c country. The planters reccived my prefent ' with the greatcr gratitude, as this rice, which c is more fruifful and better-tafted than any 6 other, has no need of watering, and becaufe, (ripening twenty days fooner, it may be ga' thered and carried into the barn before the ' tempeftuous feafon, when hurricanes often ' deftroy whole crops of ti.e other kinds. There ' was reafon to hope, that thefe advantages ( would have induced the planters to cultivate

$$
\mathrm{U}^{\top} 3 \text { the }
$$

## 694 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

' the dry tice with care; but they left it to the ( management of unfkilful flaver, who mixed 6 it with other kinds, fo that the Tonquinefe ${ }^{6}$ rice ripening much fooner, the grain fell be' fore it was cut down, and this fpecies was ' gradually loft in the ifland.'

The Tonquinefe cultivate common rice almoft in the fame manner as it is cultivated on the coaft of Coromandel. They cover the furface of their lands with water to the depth of a few tenths of an inch; and when the rice is five or fix inches in length, they pull it up, form it into fmall bundles, of four or five ftalks each, and tranfplant them into large fields, at the diftance of fix inches one from the other. This labour is generally allotted to their women and children:

The Tonquinefe employ only buffaloes in their agriculture. Thefe animals, which are of a very large fpecies, are more vigorous than oxen in warm countries, and they extricate themfelves with lefs difficulty from the dirt and clay. They are yoked in the fame manner as our horfes. Thefe people have no occation for any machines to inundate their fields: a chain of mountains hangs over their plains, from one end of the kingdom to the other, which abounds
with ferings and rivulets, that in their natural courfe water their grounds.

Next to rice, the moft important object of cultivation in Tong-king is the fugar-cane. This country produces two kinds; 'the one is large, and grows exceedingly high, and its joints are at a great diftance one from another; it always appears green, and contains abundance of juice. The other is fmaller and fhorter, and the joints are nearer to one another; when ripe, it is of a yellow colour, and affords lefs liquor than the firft; but this liquor abounds with more fugar.

When the Tonquinefe intend to plant fugarcanes, they begin by turning up the earth to the deptl of two feet; they then plant two or three cane-hhoots, a little inclined, and almoft in the fame manner as vines are planted ia feveral parts of Italy. Thefe flips are funk about eighteen inches into the earth, and planted chequer-wife, at the diftance of fix feet. They choofe the end of the rainy feafon for this operation.

Twelve or fifteen months after the cane has been planted, it isfit to be cat. When the juice is preffed out, they boil it for feveral hours, until fome of the watery part is exaporated; $\mathrm{U}_{4}$
they
they then tranfport it to the neareft market, and fell it in that fate. The labour and profits of the Tonquinefe planter end here. This fugar, which as yet refembles pure water, is purchafed by merchants, who boil it again, throwing into the coppers fome alkaline fubftances, fuch as the afhes of mufa leaves, or calcined fhells. Thefe ingredients produce a confiderable froth, which the refiner takes care to fkim off. 'The action of alkali haftens the feparation of the water from the fugar: at length, by force of boiling, the juice is reduced to the confiftence of fyrop; and when it begins to granulate, they pour it into a large, earthen veffel, where they leave it to cool for about an hour. This fyrop foon becomes covered with a thin, foft cruft of a yellowifh colour : after which, it is poured into a veffel of a conical figurc.

As fcon as the fyrop appears to have acquired the confiftence of falt throughout the whole veffel which contains it, they put it in tierces to whiten and purify it. The remaining operations are almoft the fame as thofe ufed in our Weft Indian iflands.

The Tonquinefe have few good fruits; the beft are pine-apples, oranges, and a kind of red figs, which are every where efteemed. They havẹ
have other figs much refembling thofe of Provence, both in tafte and figure; but, what is mof extraordinary, is, that thefe figs do not grow on the branches: they fpring up from the root of the tree, and fometimes in fuch abundance, that twenty men might eaflly fatisfy their hunger with them.

Large trees ate feen in Tong-king, the branches of which bear neither leaves nor fruit; they produce nothing but flowers. There is another kind, the branches of which bend naturally down to the earth, where theydake root, and from which other trees fpring up: the branches of the latter incline in the like manner, and fhoot forth roots, as the former; and thefe trces in procefs of time occupy fo extenfive a fpace, that thirty men might commodipully repofe under their fhade.

The Tonquinefe cultivate the mulberry and varnifh trees, cotton, tea, indigo, faffron and pepper; they have few greens, and they feem to have little defire of procuring them; they neglect the vine, although it is the natural production of their country; but they employ great care in raifing a plant called $t f u t$, which, being put into aftate of fermentation, throws up a fcum of a green colour, which is ufed for dying, and

298 general description
which gives a beautiful and durable green. They believe that this plant is to be found no where but in Tong-king and Cochinchina.

Elephants are very common in Tong-king; more than five hundred of them are kept for the ufe of the king. The Tonquirefe pretend that their flefh is good, and that the prince rometimes eats of it. Neither lions nor fheep are feen in this kingdom ; but there are a prodigious number of flags, bears and tygers. The apes here are remarkable for their fize and bo'dnefs; it is not uncommon to fee them, to the number of two or three thoufand, enter in a hoftile manner the fields of the planter; eat what they can ; afterwards roll large girdes of ftraw around their bodies, which they fill with rice; and return loaded with booty, in fight of the peafants, who dare not attack them. Among the birds of this country is a fpecies of goldfinch, which fings fo melodiounly, that it is diffinguifhed by the name of the celeftial bird; its eyes Sparkle like the mof brilliant ruby; it has a round, tharp bill, an azure ring round its neck, and a fmall tuft of party-coloured feathers on its head, which adds greatly to its beauty. Its wings, when it is perched, appear variegated with beautiful fhades of blue, green and yellow;
but when it flies, they lofe all their fplendeor. This bird makes its neft in the clofeft thickets, and breeds twice a year; it conceals itfelf in time of rain; but, as foon as the rays of the fun begin to dart through the clouds, it immediately quits its retreat, flutters round the hedges, and, by its warbling, proclaims to the labourers. the return of fine weather. This bird is faid to be a mortal enemy to the bo-kien, another fingular bird, which is to be found only in marfhes. As foon as it perceives the bo-kien, the feathers of its neck ftand erect, it extends and agitates its wings, opens its bill, and makes a noife like the hiffing of a ferpent; its attitude is that of a bird ready to dart on its prey: in fhort, its whole body indicates a kind of terror, mixed with fury ; but, whether it be, that it feels the inferiority of its ftrength, or whether fuch is its inftinct, it contents itfelf with looking at its enemy with a fixed and difordered eye, without offering an attack.

The bo-kien has its wings, back and tail of a dazzling white ; its head is covered with a reddifh down, and its belly is generally of a bright yellow, interfperfed with gray and black fpots. This bird, which is almolt of the fize of a quail,

## 300 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

never makes its neft but among reeds, and breeds only once a year.

This country abounds with game of all kinds, fuch as ftags, antelopes, wild goats, peacocks, hares, pheafants, \&c. Every perfon is free to hunt; but this diverfion is dangerous, on account of the great number of elephants, rhinocerofes, tygers, and other voracious animals which inhabit the forefts. The domeitic animals raifed here, are horfes, for travelling; buffaloes, for tilling the ground; oxen, hogs, goats fowls, geefe and ducks.

## C. II A P. IV. <br> COCHINCHINA.

WE have already feen, in the fecond chapter, that Cochinchina had a fhare in the early revolutions of Tong-king; that, fubject at finf to the Chinefe government, engaged afterwards in rebellion, and expofed to differ. cnt ufurpers, thefe two ftates had been compelled to return to their former dependance, after the fuccefsful expedition of General Mayven, about the year 50 of the Chriftian æra.

The

The imperial authority, after its re-eftablifhment, fubfifted in Cochinchina till the year $\mathbf{2 6}_{3}$, when a nobleman, named Kulien, undertook to deliver his country, and to free it from a foreign yoke. He caufed the Chinefe governor to be maffacred, and ufurped the throne, of which he remained afterwards peaceful poffeffor. His grandfon, Fan-y, had the imprudence during his reign to adopt a llave, named Ouen, born at Kouang-nan in Tong-king, whom he caufed to affume the name of Fan-ouen. This obfcure foreigner, admitted into the royal family, acquired foon, by this adoption and his own intrigues, an unlimited power. After the death of his benefactor, he found little difficulty of feizing the throne. To fignalize the commencement of his reign, and to gain the efteem of his fubjects by fome glorious exploit, he entered Tong-king at the head of an army, took poffeffion of Kouang-nan, his native country, and ravaged all the territories of Tjin-boa. This expedition was made in the year of our æra $347{ }^{\circ}$.

The defcendants of this fuccefsful ufurper for a long while enjoyed the throne of Cochinchina... This royal line, called Fan, did not end until 653. We have little information refpecting the reigns of thefe different princes: we bnly know,

302 GENERAX DESCRIPTSON
that they were very punctual in paying their tribute to the emperors. The Chinefe hiftory is alfo very defective with regard to the fucceeding kings.

The prince who filled the throne in 1179 turned his arms againft Camboya, entered it at the head of an army, and committed great devaftations, without making any conquef. The king of Camboya for a long time diffembled his keen refentment, that he might put himfelf into a better ftate of obtaining ampler and more certain revenge. He paft eighteen years, without indulging in any aft of hoftility; but, in 1197, he attacked the king of Cochinchina, made him peifoner, and dethroned him; and, after ravaging his territories, eftablifhed a lord of Camboya on the throne.- But this change of govermment did not long fubfith.

The king of Cochinchina having learned in 1280 the revolution which had rendered the Mogul Tartars mafters of all China, fent without delay to the new emperor, who had taken the name Chit-fou, deputies loaded with prefents, in order to pay that prince homage. Thefe deputies were honourably received ; but the emperar did not content himfelf with tribute: he carried his pretenfions farther; and refolved
refolved to fend fome of the grandees of his court to Cochinchina, to form a tribunal there, which alone fhould be entrufted with the government of the kingdom. This plan was exe: cuted; but two years afterwards, Pouti, the king's fon, being fired with indignation at feeing a council of foreigners give laws to Cochinchina, refufed to acknowledge their authority, and prevailed on his father to imprifon the grandees who by order of the emperor compofed this tribunal.

As foon as the emperor was informed of this outrage, he refolved on revenge. He caufed a fleet to be immediately equipped in the ports of the province of Canton, in which he embarked a great number of Tartar and Chinefe troops, under the command of Sotou. This fleet fet fail, and arrived at Cochinchina. Sotou landed his army, marched towards the capital, and foon made himfelf mafter of it. The king and his fons, who were obliged to fly, took refuge in the. mountains. Thence they difpatched fecret.orders, to affemble large bodies of troops in dif. ferent places, while they fortified themfelves in 2 fmall town, the gates of which were defended by fome ftrong works, and batteries of cannon, called batteries of. Mabometan cannom. They then privately

304 GENERAL DESCRIPTION
privately put to death the Tartar and Chinefe lords who compofed the tribunal eftablifhed by the emperor; and their whole thoughts were employed in devifing means to amufe Sotou, and to deftroy his army. With this defign, they fent rich prefents to the general, for himfelf and his troops, at the fame time affuring him, that they were difpofed, for the future, to comply with the will of the emperor.

Sotou at firft fuffered himfelf to be deceived by this apparent fubmifion; but he was informed by a deferter, foon after, of the maffacre of the Tartar and Chinefe nobility, of the intrigues of the king and his fon, and of the march of a formidable army which had orders to cut off his retreat. He perceived then, that he had no time to lofe, made his troops advance, and laid clofe fiege to the fortified town. The attack and defence were equally refolute; but the difadvantage of the ground, and the obftinate refiflance of the befieged, having occafioned a great flaughter among his troops, he thought it. prudent to retire, left he fhould lofe his whole army.

The king of Cochinchina, who flattered him-. felf that this repulfe would render the emperor* more moderate in his demands, fent a deputa-. tivis
tion to him, of fome of the grandees of his court, to affure him of his refpectful fubmiffion; but he only fought to appeafe him for the prefent, in order to gain tinse. In this however he was difappointed; for the bad fuccefs of the expedition had fo chagrined the Chinefe monarch, that he refufed to admit the ambaffadors to his prefence, and gave orders to his fon, to affemble an army, and to lead them in perfon againft the king of Cochinchina. Sotou was commanded at the fame time to join the prince, that, by their united forces, they might entirely crufh the enemy. However prudent thefe meafures may appear, they were not attended with the defired fuccefs : all thefe preparations ended in a few acts of hoftility, and fome ravages committed by the troops of Sotou. The emperor Cbit-fou died before he could revenge himfelf on Cochinchina; and the kings of that country maintained their independence, by paying the ufual tribute, which they ftill fend to the emperor.

The Ming having expelled the Mogul Tartars from China, the new emperor, chief of that dynafty, fent notice to the king of Cochinchina, of his acceffion to the throne, and, what had until that time been without example, caufed
facrifices to be offered up in honour of the fpirits of mountains, forefts and rivers. Itaiaba, who was then reigning, fent his tribute to the new monarch, from whom he reèived magnificent prefents. In 1373 , having fent a fleet againft fome pirates who infefted the feas, and having taken twenty of their fhips, he prefented to the emperor feventy thoufand pounds weight of precious wood, which had been found in the captured veffels.-But the friendfhip between thefe two courts did not long fublift.

The king of Cochinchina, contrary to the advice, and even orders of the emperor, carried fire and fword into the territories of Tongking. This war employed the reft of his reign, and continued under thofe of his fucceffors. There are fetw examples of fo long and bloody a war: it was not terminated until 1471, when, after a defperate and decifive battle, the king of Tong-king became abfolute mafter of Cochinchina. His enemy had expofed himfelf too much in battle; he was taken prifoner, and the people of Cochinchina, being without refource, were obliged to fubmit to the conqueror.

The Chinefe hiftorians fpeak little of Cochinchina after this revolution; we however know, that it again recovered its independence, and
continued afterwards to be governed, as it is at prefent, by its own kings. In 167 I the Tonquinefe attempted an expedition againf Cochinchina. The grand preparations which they had made, and an army of eighty thoufand effective men, feemed to promife fuccefs and an eafy conqueft. The troops of Cochinchina amounted only to twenty-five thoufand. The two armies engaged, and the battle continued three days ; but, notwithftanding their fuperiority in number, the Tonquinefe loft feventeen thoufand men, and the enemy gained a complete vittory. Since that time, the Tonquinefe have remained peaceably within their own boundaries, while Cochinchina has aggrandized herfelf by fubduing the mofuntaineers, and even the kings of Tfiampa and Camboya, whom fhe has compelled to become tributaries to her.

We fhall not enter into any detail concerning the people of Cochinchina. As they have a common origin with the Tonquinefe, theydiffer very little in their manner of living, laws and cuftoms, which they have in a great part borrowed from the Chinefe.

In four inlands fituated near the coafts of Cochinchina are found thofe celebrated nefts fo

$$
\mathrm{X}_{2} \quad \text { much }
$$

mulch fought after for feafoning ragouts. They are made by a fmall bird that is almof of the fize of our fwallow, and are cemented with a kind of gum, the different layers of which may be feparated in the fame manner as the coats of an onion. When this gum has been diffolved in warm water, it is ufed for feafoning fifh and difhes of various kinds; to fauces it communicates a moft exquifite tafte. To the eaft of thefe ifles, there are five others, that are fmaller, where prodigious numbers of turtles are found, the flefh of which is fo delicate, that the Tonquinefe and people of Cochinchina often fight defperate battles in order to take them from one another.

The commodities for which there is readieft fale at Cochinchina, are faltpetre, fulphur, lead, fine cloths, barred or flowered chints. Pearls, amber and coral were formerly in great requelt there ; but at prefent the two laft only are faleable; and this is not the cafe, unlefs the beads of coral are round, well polifhed, and of a beautiful red colour. With regard to amber, it muft be extremely clear, the beads muft be of an equal fize, and not larger than an ordinary nut. The principal exports of Cochinchina are filks, fugar, ebony and Calamba-wood, thof nefts
nefts before mentioned, gold in duft or in bars. which is fold for only ten times its weight in filver; and laftly, copper and porcelain, tranfported thither from China and Japan.

European merchants feem to complain unjuftly of the demands made in Cochinchina for entrance, clearance and anchorage. Thefe duties are very trifling; thofe even of the cuftomhoule amount only to four per cent. It is true, that on the arrival of a hip, nothing can be removed from her until the has been infpected; the cuftom-houfe officers unload her, weigh and count the fmalleft pieces, and generally take poffeffion of what they find moft valuable, in order to fend it to the king, who keeps what he thinks proper, and returns the value. If the king only took this liberty, no great lofs would enfue; but it is faid, that the grandees of the court follow his example, and that they are not quize fo punctual in their payments. The principal part of the lading being thus difpofed of, the ordinary goods (which, had they been accompanied with valuable merchandize, would have had a ready market) can fcarce find a purchafer.

This inconvenience, though unavoidable does not howeyer appear to be without re$X_{3}$ medy.
medy. When the Dutch fent to Cochinchina, from Surat and Coromandel, veffels loaded with cloths, lead and faltpetre, their cargoes were fuffered to remain entire, becaufe they had taken the precaution to pay every year a certain fum for each reffel that entered. Other nations might have had recourfe to the fame expedient; but, by attempting to free themfelves from a very fmall duty, which it would have been prudent to pay, they gave a mortal ftab to their commerce. The people of Cochinchina, for feveral years paft, have been much more moderate; and whatever their exactions may be, they are by no means fo great as thofe of the Tonquinefe, whote trade however is ftill kept up merely by their continual intercourfe with foreigners.

The Japanefe is the only current money in Cochinchina: it is paid and received by weight. The money of the country, which is of copper, is as large as our common counters, of a round figure, and has a hole in the middle, by which it may be ftrung in the fame manner as beads. Three hundred pieces are put on one fide, and threc hundred on another, which pafs in Cochinchina for a thoufand, becaufe in fix hundred there are formd ten tịines fixty, which
which make a century among almoft all the people of the eaft. There is no country perhaps where merchants are more liable to be deceived with regard to the value of money; this is owing to the pieces being unequal in figure and quality, and to the difficulty of determining their value, which is regulated only by a few characters that are ftampt upon them. On one fide they have four Chincfe letters; on the other, nothing. Prudence requires, that they fhould have honeft and fkilful people to afcertain the goodnefs of thefe pieces, and to fpecify their value; otherwife, they run a great rifque of becoming dupes to the merchants of Cochinchina, who make a great merit of being able to cheat an European.

A report has been fpread throughout Europe, that when a trading veffel happens to run aground in Cochinchina, or to be driven into any of its harbours by ftreis of weather, the king feizes the cargo, if the rudder be broken. This report is entirely void of foundation. When a fhip has been wrecked on the coafts of Cochinchina, the is much fafer from pillage than any where elfe. Barks are fent immediately to the relief of the crew, and people are employed to drag the fea with nets, in order to recover the $\mathrm{X}_{4}$ goods

312 GENERAL DESCRIPTION goods that ane loft; in fhort, neither labour nor expences are fpared, to put the fhip in the beft condition poffible. There are only two things that can hurt the trade of foreigners at Cochinchina; and one of thefe may be eafily avoided. The firft regards the clearing out of veffels. While the mafter is waiting, on the evening before his departure, or on the day fixed for failing, in order to receive his difpatches, it often happens that he lofes his voyage, which caufes an immenfe lofs, and often ruins a trader for' eyer. Care muft be taken to folicit for a clearance a month before; and by ufing this precaution, one is certain of obtaining it, and of departing on the day appointed. The fecond, which is unavoidable, is the neceffity of felling goods on credit, becaufe payment is feldom made at the time ftipulated. This however is contrary to the inclination of the prince; for, every merchant who is able to convey to him his complaints refpecting thefe unjuft delays, is fure of being immediately paid, and often beven with intereft.

## C H A P. V.

## THIBET.

THIBET is known under different names. The Chinefe call it Tfang; the Tartars, Barantola, Bouttan and Tangout. Both diftinguilh it alfo by the name of The Kingdom of Lafa, becaufe it is in the country of Lafa that the dalailama keeps his court. This vaft kingdom is reckoned to be fix hundred and forty leagues in extent from eaft to weft, and fix hundred and fifty from north to fouth. Thibet is enclofed by the country of Kokonor, the provinces of Se-tchuen and Yun-nan, the kingdom of Ava, the ftates of the Mogul, Bukaria, and the great defert of Cobi.

We can difcover nothing certain or difting in the hiftory of Thibet, till about the year 420. We are told, that a prince then exifted who was known by the title of Toufan, who fubdued the people of the provinces of Chen-fi and Sem tchuen, and extended his conquefts, fo as to make himfelf mafter of Thibet. This conqueror and his fucceffors reigned there for more than a century, without having any communication with China.

3 34 GENERAL DESCRIPTION
Long-ban, a Toufan prince, is the firft fovereign of Thibet, who began about the year 634 to fend ambaffadors to China. Seven years after, the fame prince efpoufed the emperor's daughter ; and this alliance added fo much to his power, that he was able to fubjugate all thofe nations which were to the weft of China. This power of the Toufan princes fubfifted for near two hundred years; but it gradually declined, and was almoft entirely annihilated about the year 907 , towards the end of the dynafty of Tang. Several finall fates were then Formed in Thibet. The priefts of this country infenfibly became poffeffed of vaft domains; and the fuperiors of feveral monafteries, by degrees, rendered themfelves fo powerful, that they exercifed an authority almof fovereign within their diftricts. It however appears, that There was always a prince who had the title of King of $T$ 'bibet; but thefe princes, under the dynafty of Song, were tributary to China.

Thibet continued to decline more and more, until Clbi-tfou, firf emperor of the dynafty of Yiven, divided the country into feveral proFinces, or departments, the principal of which
 fuid that which enjoyed the mildeft climate.

## OF CHINA.

315
Lafa, now become the ordinary refidence of the fovereign lama, is fituated here. There was then in this province a bonze, or prieft, named Paffepa. The emperor conferred on him the title of prince, honoured him with a golden feal, and permitted him to eftablifh tribunals in the country of Ouffe-bang, and other parts of Thibet. He obtained alfo the titles of mafter or tutor to the emperor, doctor of the empire, head of the law, and even that of ouang, which fignifies king or prince. His fucceffors were honoured with the fame titles, and were, like him, tributary to the emperors of China.

In 1414; about the middle of the reign of Yong-lo, eight other bonzes received from the emperor the title of ouang, with the fame prerogatives as thofe before mentioned. They were ftyled great doctors, maflers of the law, and zealous propagators of that law ; but thefe pompous titles did not exempt them from paying the tribute which had been impored on them.

The bonzes of Thibet, about the year $\mathbf{1 4 2 6}$, affumed the tirle of grand lamme. The moft powerful among them, named Tfong-kepa, made Laja the place of his refidence, and was acknowledged chief of all the lamas. It was he

316 GENETAL DESCRIPTION
who eftablifhed the law refpecting the yellow
cap; for it mult be obferved, that there are two Einds of lamas, diftinguifhed by red and yellow cats. His fucceffor was the firft who appointed a typa or prime minifter, whom he entrufted with the government of his ftates. The next in order was the firft who took the diftinguifhed title of dalai-lama, by which he was raifed far whove the reft; for dalai fignifies morally and phyically extended, great, and almofi werithout bourxds.

The bama-princes were not yet however fole fovereigns of Thibet. About the beginning of the laft century, a prince, named TJang-pa-ban, poffeffed great part of it, to the weft of Lafa. His power extended as far as the fources of the Ganges, and over the country of Siringar, which is watered by the fame river. Father Andrada, a Jefuit, who in 1624 was at the court of this prince, affures us, that he was a zealous protector of the Chriftian religion, and that he feemed greatly inclined to embrace it. The Tartar hiftory of the fame period corroberates this circumftance; for it relates, that this prince defpifed the lamas, that he abandoned the law of the god $F o$, and that he fought every opportunity of deftroying it The

The dalai-lama, being highly incenfed at not receiving the homage of $T$ fang-pa-ban, formed a league with the Tartars of Kokonor, whofe prince, named Kouchi, entered Thibet at the head of a powerful army, attacked TJang-paЂan, defeated him, and took him prifoner, and, fome time after, caufed him to be put to death. To this Tartar prince the dalai-lama was indebted for his fovereignty over all Thibet. Far from appropriating to himfelf the fruits of his victory, Koucbi declared himfelf a vaffal of the fupreme chief of his religion, and was fatisfied with receiving from him the title of han, which he had never before enjoyed. This prince, to continue his protection to the dalai-lama, and fecure to him the quiet poffeffion of his new conquefts, eftablifhed himfelf, together with his troops, in the neighbourhood of Lafa. His fons had no great inclination for returning to country that their father had abandoned : they followed his example, and remaised in Thibet.

In 1642 the dalai-lama fent ambafladors TJong-te, father to the firft emperor of the prefent dynafty of the Mantchew Tartars, threw himfelf under his protection, and paid him tribute. Ten years after, the dalai-lama himfelf went to Pe-king, and paid homage to the em-

## 3I8 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

 peror. He was loaded with honours, received 2 golden feal and magnificent prefents from the emperor, and was confirmed in his title of dalai-lama.Kang-bi, being defirous of honouring the ypa or prime minifter of the dalai-lama, declared him a prince in 1693, and granted him a golden feal. This minifter however was far from being attached to the interefts of the emperor. On the contrary, he was a traitor, who fecretly betrayed him, and feconded the ambitious views of Kaldan, king of the Eleuthes, who was'a declared enemy to the Mantchew Tartars. He even endeavoured to perfuade the grand lama not to go to Pe-king, to which place the emperor had called him ; and when the dalailama died, he kept that event fo fecret, that the emperor was not informed of it.—But all thele intrigues were at length difcovered in 1705. Latfa-ban, prince of the Tartars of Kokonor, caufed this perfidious minifter to be put to death. Kang-bi, informed of the crimes which he had committed, approved of the punifhment he had met with, and fent fome of the grandees of his court to Thibet, to govern it, in conjunction with the Tartar prince, whom he loaded with prefents. He afterwards appointed्
x new dalai-lama, who was the fixth who had borne that title.

Tcbong-kar, or the principal king of the Eleuthes, in 1714 , made an irruption inta Thibet, and committed the moft horrid ravages. The Tartar prince, who endeavoured to oppofe this torrent, was killed in combat ; and the celebrated pagod of Poutala was almoft reduced to afhes. The king of the Eleuthes carried away from this pagod, and from all the others of the country, immenfe riches in gold, filver, copper, precious ftones, filk ftuffs, \&c. He put a great number of the lamas to the fword, and fent reveral of them into Tartary, enclofed in facks, which were thrown acrofs the backs of camels. This prince pretended to be the only and real fovereign of Thibet; and he ordered the lamas to renounce all their authority over the people, to retire to their monafteries, and to employ themfelves only in faying their prayers.

The lamas immediately fled, and difperied themfelves on all fides. The dalai-lama lof no time to implore the protection of the erterer Kang-bi; and the princes of Kokonor, whore country had been expoled to the fame ravages; united with him in begging for relief. The emperor, moved by their importunate folicitar
tiong,
tions, immediately alfembled a numerous armys commanded by experienced Tartar and Chinefe officers, and placed one of his fons and a grandfon at their head. This army marched into Kokonor, drove from thence the king of the Eleuthes, and entered Thibet, while another body of Chinefe troops penetrated thither alfo by the province of Se-tcbuen.

The dalai-lama was re-eftablifhed, and the reft of the lamas were put in poffeffion of their pagods. The remainder of the troops of the Eleuthes made their efcape through the defiles of the mountains. Although good order and tranquillity feemed to be reftored in Thibet, the emperor commanded fome of the Tartar nobility to remain at Lafa and in Kokonor, to guvern there in his name, and to watch the motions of Tichong-han. The fame plan of conduct was adopted and followed by the emperor Yongtching, the fon and fucceffor of Kang-bi. He continued to keep up ftrong armies, that were always in readinefs to oppofe the inroads of the king of the Eleuthes. However, forne lords of Thibet revolted in 1727, one of whom even rook the title of governor-general of the counwry, and caufed a Tartar prince of the fourth rank to be put to death.-But thefe flight commotions
motions were foon fuppreffed. Kien-long, the prefent emperor, raifed, in 1739 , to the dignity of prince of the fecond rank a perfon whom the emperor Yong-tching, his father, had appointed viceroy of Thibet. Peace has been fince preferved there, and it appears to be now firmly eftablifhed, as the Thibetians have nothing more to fear from the incurfions of the Eleuthes, who, fince 1759 , have been fubjects of the empire.

The tribute which the fovereign of Thibet fends to the emperor of China confifts generally of gold or copper ftatues of the god Fo , perfumes, amber, coral, precious ftones, woollen ftuffs, and fword blades. The emperor alfo requires from the dalai-lama a certain number of veffels, or frmall pitchers, filled with water from the Ganges. Since the latter end of the reign of Kang-bi, the emperor has always had fome of this water in his palace, and he even carries it with him when he travels.

A very extraordinary cuftom is fanctioned in Thibet, which permits women to have feveral hufbands at one time. The degrees of confanguinity between the hufbands are no obftacle to thefe unions; for a woman maty marry all the brothers of a family; the chiidren are diVonif.
vided among them; the eldeft has the firft born, and the younger, thofe that are brought into the world afterwards. When the lamas are reproached for permitting and authorifing this indecent cuftom, they plead in their excufe the fcarcity of women in Tartary and Thibet. It is true, that more boys than girls are to be found in their families; but it may eafily be feen, that the Tartars ufe this pretence in order that their women may be permitted to efpoufe feveral hufbands.

The dalai-lama does not refide in the city of Lafa, but on a mountain in the neighbourhood, called Poutala. On this mountain there is a great number of pagods, the moft fumptuous of which he inhabits. He paffes great part of his life on a kind of altar, where he fits motionlefs, in a crofs-legged pofture, on a large and magnificent cuhhion, and receives, with the greatelt gravity, the adoration, not only of the Thibetians, but alfo of a prodigious multitude of ftrangers and pious pilgrims, who undertake long and difficult journies to go and worfhip him on their bended knees, and to recejve his benediction. The grand lama falutes no one; he neither uncovers nor rifes up to any perfon, whatever his rank may be ; with the fame
eye, he beholds at his feet the greateft princes and the meaneft of their fubjects. He contents himfelf with laying his hand on the head of his adorer, who imagines that he obtains, by this impofition alone, the remiffion of all his fins.

Next to the Thibetians, the Tartars are the moft zealous worthippers of the grand lama; they arrive in crowds at Poutala, from the remoteft corners of the country; even the weakeft of the female fex are not terrified by the fatigues that infeparably attend thefe long journies. When the army of the Eleuthes were ravaging the territories of Thibet, among the number of pilgrims then at $L a f a$ was a Tartar princefs, accompanied by her fon, whofe ufual place of refidence lay beyond the Cafpian fea, between Aftracan, Saratoc and the river fauk. Surrounded by foldiers, and expofed to their infults, the found it neceffary, in fo dangerous a fituation, to apply to the emperor for protection, who affigned her the revenues of fome land in Tartary for her fubfiftence; and, having afterwards obtained permiffion for her to pafs through Siberia, this prince fent her back to her own country, under a proper efcort of Chinefe officers.

324 General Description
This profound veneration, which draws fo many people to Lafa, to proftrate themfelves at the fcet of the grand lama, is founded on the idea which they entertain of his great power and fanctity. They are fully perfuaded, that all the divinity of Fo refides in him, that he is omnifcient and omniprefent, and that he has neither need of information, nor occafion to afk queftions, in order to difcover the fecret thoughts of men. They believe him to be immortal, and that, when he appears to die, his foul and his divinity only change their place of refidence, and tranfmigrate into another tody. All their care is then employed to difcover the place where it hath pleafed him to be born again; even fome of the Tartar princes thernfelves have affifted in this important fearch; but they are obliged to be directed by certain lannas, who alone are acquainted with the figns by which the new-born god may be difcovered, or rather, they only know what child the preceding dalai-lama appointed to be his fucceffor.

Large pagods are frequently to be feen in Thibet, where the moft diftinguiihed of the lamas refide. They affume, different titles of honour ; that of boutouctou is one of the moft venerable, and is never granted but to thofe
who are accounted living Fos. Thefe boutouctous are not always fixed to the fame place; they have liberty to refide wherever they pleafe, and to choofe for their abode whatever fpot appears to them moft agreeable. They are not even confined to Thibet; fome of them are to be found in the neighbouring tates, efpecially in Tartary.

The inhabitants of Thibet are not the only people who may attain to the dignity of lama. Tartars, and even Chinefe, have afpired to the priefthood, and repaired to Lafa, in hopes of obtaining it. If they can get themfelves admitted among the difciples of the grand lama, the number of whom is fixed at two hundred, they confider this admiffion as the commencement of their promotion, and as the firft ftep towards dignity and power: the fubaltern grand lamas are chofen from among thefe difciples. The houtouctous, however, whatever figns they may have in them of the prefence of the god Fo, are not acknowledged as fuch until after having paffed a certain time in the fchool of the grand lama. When they have arrived at this dignity, they live midft fplendour and opulence, and are continually furrounded by a crowd of adorers, who load them with prefents.

$$
\mathrm{Y}_{3} \quad \text { The }
$$

326 General description
The richeft and moft confiderable of the Tartar lamas who inhabit Thibet are thofe whom the Chinefe call mong-fan: they poffefs extenfive domains to the north of the province of Yunnan, between the beautiful rivers of Kin-che$k i a n g$ and $V$ ou-leang. Thefe land ${ }^{\text {w were granted }}$ to them by Oufor-guei, whe became mafter of Yun-man we ea the Mantchew Tartars fubdued Chinn, in code to bincr them over to his party, and that he might by their means gain the fupport of all the 1 mas of Thibet.

Thefe lamas had sreat power in China while the Tart or fami'y of $1 \mathbf{1}$ en were in poffeffion of the throne. There are fill to be feen at Peking feveral monuments which were erected in honour of the lamas of that time; but the Chinefe having açain become mafters, under the dynafty of Mins, the lamas were expelled with the reit of the Tartars: they have however recovered a good deal of their confcquence under the prefent family. Although the Mantchew Tartars had never any lamas, they no fooner undertook the conqueft of China, than they protected them openly, through policy; and foon after, government caufed magnificent pagods to be crected for them. This example was followed by a great number of princes,
princeffes and wealthy people, who feemed to vie with one another in their eager defire for building them temples; and it is not aftonifhing, that, to poffefs all there pagods, the lamas have multiplied fo much in China. They muft even be rich there ; for the greater part of thefe lamas appear in public in veftments of red and yellow fattin, ornamented with the richeft and moft valuable furs. They are all mounted on excellent horfes, and are followed by a number of domeflics, proportioned to their rank as mandarins; for the emperor permits them to carry a cufhion and the other badges of dignity which belong to the quality of mandarin.

The lamas of Thibet are not fo magnificent in their drefs; they wear only a napped kind of woollen ftuff, called in China pou-lou, which is ufed for covering feats, becaufe it generally lafts long, and retains its colour. The grand lama was feen at $L a f_{a}$ in 1717 clothed in a red drefs of this ftuff, having on his head a yellow cap, ornamented with gilding.

Befides this cap, the lamas have feveral bonnets, or tiaras, that are the diftinguifhing marks of the different degrees of honour to which they have arrived. The cap which ftrikes Europeans moft, has a great refemblance to a biY 4
fhop's

328 GENERAL DESCRIPTION
thop's mitre : they wear it on horfeback, as well as on foot; but the cloven part of this kind of mitre defcends directly to the middle of the forehead. The obligations which the office of lama impofes, are neither few nor trifling; but there is no one among them who engages to difcharge them all. They divide and fhare the burden. One takes the charge of obferving one precept, and another obliges himfelf to practife another; and fo of the reft : they however have certain common prayers, which they chaunt in a very agreeable manner; and they are all obliged to renounce the vanities of the world, to live in celibacy, and to have no concern with trade or commerce.

The language fpoken in Thibet is entirely different from that of the Tartars, whether Mantchews or Moguls. It is almoft the fame as that of thofe people called $S_{1}$-fans: the only difference confifts in the acceptation of certain words, and fome few particularities of pronunciation.

The phyficians of Thibet are not deftitute of fkill; and fome of the dftronomers of this country are acquainted with the motions of the heavenly bodies, and able to calculate eclipfes; but the lamas are generally very ignorant. It
is rare to find any of them who underftand their ancient books, or who are able to read them. This difficulty arifes from the characters of thefe books being different from thofe ufed in Thibet and Tartary, and from the language in which they are written being now death as it is never ufed, either in fpeaking or writing.

The Thibetians have no fortified towns, or places of defence. Their cities, in general, are very fmall. Lafa itfelf, where the dalai-lama keeps his court, is rather a celebrated temple than a city.

## CHAP. VI.

## THE COUNTRY OF HA-MI.

THE country of $\mathrm{Ha} a \mathrm{mi}$ is fituated to the north-ealt of China, at the extremity of that defert which the Chinefe call Cba-mo, and the Tartars, Cobi. It is only ninety leagues diftant from the moft wefterly point of the province of Chen-fi. This country was inhabited in the early ages by a wandering people, named Iong. About the year 950 before the Chriftian æra, they fent deputies to pay homage to the emperor
emperor of China, and prefented fome fabres by way of tribute. The civil wars by which China was torn about the end of the dynafty of $\mathcal{T}$ cbeou having prevented affiftance from being fent to thefe people, they fell under the dominion of the Hiong-nou, who appear to have been the fame as the Huns, and who at that time were a formidable nation. The Chinefe fevcral times loft and recovered the country of Ha-mi. In 131 (the fixth year of the reign of Cbun-ty, of the dynafty of the eaftern Han), the emperor kept an officer there in quality of governor. Under the following dynaftic, the fame vicifitudes were experienced: Ha-mi was fometimes united to the province of Cher-fi, fonctimes independent of it, and fomelimes even of the whole empire. The fituation of thefe people (feparated by valt deferts from China, to which, hefides, they had no relation, either in language, manners or cuftoms) muft have greatly contributed to facilitate thcfe revolutions. All the tributary ftates of the empire having revolted in 610 , that of $\mathrm{Ha}-\mathrm{m}$ followed their example ; but it again fubmitted to the yoke, under Tai-tfong, fecond emperor of the dynafty of Tang, who had fent one of his gencrals with an army to reduce it. This great
prince paid particular attention to his new conqueft. He divided it into three diftricts, and connected its civil and military government in fuch manner to that of the province of Chen-fi, and other neighbouring countrics, that tranquillity prevailed there during his reign and feveral of thofe that followed. Through Ha-mi all the caravans which went from the weft to China, or from China to the weft, were obliged to pals. The emperors, predeceffors of Taitfong, were fatisfied with caufing wine to be tranfported from Hat-mi in thins carried by camels; but, Tar-fong, fays the Chinefe hiftory, beving /ublued the king dom of Ha-mi, ordered fome vine-plants of the fpecies called majou, to be brought bim, whach be caufed to be planted in bis gardens; be, befides, learned the manner of making wine, the ufe of which proved both ferviceable and burtful to bim.

Luxury and effeminacy having weakened the dynafty of Tang, the Mahometans (who had made a rapid progrefs in all the countries that are fituated between Pcrfia, Cobi and the Cafpian fea) advanced as far as $\mathrm{H}_{1}$ - mi, which they conquered. It appears, that this country afterwards had princes of its own, but dependent on the Tartars, who fucceffively ruled thefe immenfe

## 332 GENIRAL DESCRIPTION

immenfe regions. The Yuen, or Mogul Tartars, again united the country of Ha -mi to the province of Chen-fi ; and this re-union fubfifted until $1_{3} 60$, at which time the emperor formed it into a kingdom, on condition of its princes doing homage and paying tribute. The king of $H a-m i$ was honoured with a new title in 1404, and obtained a golden feal. After a conteft of feveral years for the fucceffion to the throne, the kingdom of Ha-mi fell a prey to the king of Tou-erllh-fon. This yoke foon became uneafy to the people of $\mathrm{Ha-m}$ : they revolted from their new mafters, and made conquefts from them in their turn. The new hing whom they made choice of, did not long poffefs the throne: he was conquered and killed in a bloody battle which he fought with the king of Tour-culb-fin, who alfo perilhed fome time after. Since this epocha, the country of Ha-mi has been fucceffively expofed to anarchy, or governed by its own princes. The prince who filled the throne in 1696 , acknowledged himfelf a valfal of the empire, and fent as tribute to Pe-king camels, horfes and fabres. Kang-hi received his homage with the ufual ceremonies, and publithed a diploma, which eftablifhed the rank that the king of Ha-mi fhould hold among the
the tributary princes, the time when he fhould come to render homage, the nature of the prefents neceffary for his tribute, the number of auxiliaries he was bound to furnifh in time of war, and the manner of his appointing a fucceffor. All thefe regulations have fubfifted till this time.

The country of Ha-mi, though furrounded by deferts, is accounted one of the moft delightful in the world. The loil produces abundance of grain, fruits, leguminous plonts, and pafture of every kind. The rice which grows here, is particularly efteemed in Chiia; and pomegranates, oranges, peaches, raifins and prunes have a moft exquifite tafte ; even the jujubes are fo juicy, and have fo delicious a flavour, that the Chinefe call them perfumed $j u$ jubes. There is no fruit more delicate or more in requeft than the melons of $\mathrm{Ha} a-m i$, which are carried to Pe-king, for the emperor's table. Thefe melons are much more wholefome than thofe of Europe, and have this fingular property, that they may be kept frefh during great part of the winter *.

[^0]
## 334 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

But the moft ufeful and moft efteemed production of the country of $\mathrm{Ha}-\mathrm{mi}$, is its dried raifins. Thefe raifins are of two kinds. The firf, which are much ufed in the Chinefe medicine, feem to have a perfect refemblance to thofe known in Europe by the name of Corinthian. The fecond, which are in much greater requeft for the table, are fmaller and more delicate than thofe of Provence. The Chinefe authors perfectly agree with Meffrs. Lemery and Geoffroy, refpecting the virtue and qualiries of thefe dried grapes or raifins; but they attribute fo much more efficacy to thofe of Ha-mi than to thofe of China, that they prefcribe them in fmaller dofes. They obferve, that an infufion of the firft is of great fervice in facilitating an eruption of the fmall-pox about the fourth day, when the patient either is or feems to be too weak; and to promote a gentle perfpiration in fome kinds of plcurifies, or malignant fevers. The dofe muft be varicd, according to the age, habit of body and ftrength of the fatient; and great care muft be taken to adminifter this remedy feafonably and with judgmenr.

The emperor caufed plants to be tranfiported from Ha-mi to Pe-king, which were immediately planted in liis gardens. As thefe plants
were cultivated with extraordinary care, under his own eyes, they have perfectly fucceeded. The raifins produced by them are exceedingly fweet, and have a moft exquifite flavour.

Although the country of $H a-m i$ (the latitude of which is $42^{\circ} 53^{\prime} 20^{\prime \prime}$ ) lies farther towards the north than feveral of the provinces of France, we are affured, that its climate is more favourable to the culture of vines, and that it gives a fuperior degree of quality to the grapes. It never rains at $H_{l l-m l u}$; even dew and fogs are fcarcely ever feen there ; the country is watered only by the fnow which falls in winter, and by the water of this fnow when melted, which is collected at the bottoms of the mountains, and preferved with great care and induftry. The methol of drying grapes in Ha $m i$ is much fimpler than that practifed in the provinces of China. The people of Chen-fi hold them over the ftean of hot wine, and even fometimes boil them a few feconds in wine in which a little clarified honey has been dilated. In the kingdom of Ha-mi they wait until the grapes are quite ripe; they then expole them to the fcorching rays of the fun; afterwards, pick them, and leave them in that manner until they are quite dry. However dry thefe grapes
may be, they become fhrivelled, without loling any of their fubftance, and without growing flat : good raifins ought to be almoft as crifp as fugar-candy.

The kingdom of Ha-mi contains a great number of villages and hamlets; but it has, properly, only one city, which is its capital, and has the fame name. It is furrounded by lofty walls, which are half a league in circumference, and has two gates, one of which fronts the eaft, and the other the weft. Thefe gates are exceedingly beautiful, and make a fine appearance at a diftance. The ftreets are ftraight, and well laid out ; but the houfes (which contain only a ground-floor, and which are almoft all conftructed of earth) make very little fhew : however, as this city enjoys a ferene fky , and is fituated in a beautiful plain, watered by a river, and furrounded by mountains which fhelter it from the north winds, it is a moft agreeable and delightful refidence. On whatever fide one approaches it, gardens may be feen, which contain every thing that a fertile and cultivated foil can produce in the mildeft climates. All the furrounding fields are enchanting; but they do not extend far; for on feveral fides they terminate in dry plains, where a number of beautiful
beautiful horfes are fed, and a fpecies of excellent fheep, which have large flat tails that fometimes weigh three pounds. The country of Ha -mi appears to be very abundant in foffils and valuable minerals: the Chinefe have, for a long time, procured diamonds and a great deal of gold from it; at prefent, it fupplies them with a kind of agate, on which they fet a great value. With regard to the inhabitants of this finall ftate, they are brave, capable of eaduring fatigue, very dexterous in all budily exercifes, and make excellent foldiers; but they are fickle and foon irritated; and, when in a paffion, they are extremely ferocious and fanguinary.

## C H A P. VII.

TIIE ISLES OF LIEOU-KIEOU.

THESE ifles (hitherto little known to geographers, who have been fatisfied with marking their exiftence and latitude in their charts) form a powerful and extenfive empire, the inhabitants of which are civilized, and ought not to be confounded with other Vol. I. Z favage
$33^{8}$ generai description favage nations difperfed throughout the iflands of Afia. Father Gabil, a Jefuit, has furnifhed us with fome interefting details refpecting thefe iflanders, which he extracted from a Chinefe relation, publifhed in $\mathbf{1 7 2 1}$, at the end of a voyage that was undertaken on the following account.-The emperor Kang-bi, having refolved, in 1719 , to fend an embaffador to the king of Lieou-kieou, chofe for this purpofe one of the great doctors of the empire, named $S u-$ pao-koang. This learned man departed from China in 1719 , and returned to Pe-king in 1720 , where, in the year following, he caufed a relation of his voyage to be publifhed in two rolumes. It is in the firft of thefe, that he gives an accurate and particular defcription of the ines of Liecul-kicou; and what he relates appears to be worthy of greater credit, becaufe, being on the fpot, he cramined, as he himfelf fays, according to the orders of the emperor, whatever he found curious or interefting, refpecting the number, fituation and productions of thefe ifles; as alfo the hiftory, religion, inanners and cuftoms of the people who inhabit them.

Thefe inles, fituated between Corea, Formofa and Japan, are in number thirty-fix. The principal and largeft is called Lieou-kieou; the reft
have each a particular name. The large ifland extends from north to fouth almoft 440 lys ", and 120 or 130 from eaft to weft; but, on the fouth fide, the extent from eaft to weft is not 100 lys. The fouth-eaft part of the ifland, where the court refides, is called Cheouli, and it is there, that Kint-cbing, the capital city, is fituated. The king's palace, which is reckoned to be four leagues in circumference, is built on a neighbouring mountain. It has four gates, which correfpond to the four cardinal points; and that which fronts the weft, forms the grand entry. The view which this palace commands is moft extenfive and delightful; it reaches as far as the port of Napa-kiang, at the diftance of ten lys, to the city of Kint-ching, and to a great number of other cities, towns, villages, palaces, temples, monafteries, gardens, and plea-fure-houfes. It ftands in longitude $146^{\circ}{ }^{2} 6^{\prime}$ eaft, and in latitude $26^{\circ} 2^{\prime}$ north.

If we believe thefe iflanders, the origin of their empire is lof in the remoteft antiquity. They reckon up twenty-five fucceffive dynaf-

[^1]$$
\mathrm{Z}_{2}
$$

340 GENERAEDESCRIPTION
ties, the duration of which forms a period of more than eighteen thoufand years. It would be ufelefs to employ a fingle moment in pointing out the abfurdity of thefe pretenfions. It is however certain, that the exiftence of the country called Lieou-kieou was not known in China before the year 605 of the Chrifion xra. It was in the courfe of that year, that one of the emperors of the dynafty of Soui, having heard of thefe illes, was defirous of knowing their fituation. This prince at firlt fent fome Chinefe thither ; but their expedition proved fruitlefs, as the want of intorpreters prevented them from acquiring that kac wledge which was the object of their voy.ge. They onlybrought fome of the inanders with them to Srgan-fout, the capilal of the province of Cben- $\sqrt{3}$, which was the utual retidence of the emperors of the dynafty of Soui. It fortunatcly happened, that an embuffador of the king of Japan was then at court. This embaffador and his attendants immediatcly knew the frangers to be natives of Lueou-kicou; but they fpoke of thefe ifles as of a miferable and wetched country, the inhabitants of which had never been civilized. The emperor of Chind aftcrwards learned, that the principal inand lay to the calt of $\mathbf{a}$ city called
at prefent Fou-tcheou-fou, which is the capital of the province of Fo-kien; and that, in a paffage of five days, one might reach the large ifland where the king kept his court.

On this information, the emperor lang-li fent filiful men, accompanied by interpreters, to fummon the prince to do homage to the emperor of China, and to pay him tribute. This propofal was very ill received. The king of Leou-kzou fent back the Chinefe, telling them, fternly, that he acknowledged no prince to be his fuperior. This anfwer irritated the emperor, who, to obtain revenge, caufed a fleet to be immediately equipped in Fo-kien, in which he embarked ten thoufand men. This fleet fet fail, and arrived in fafety at the pori of Napar king. The army, fpite of every effort made by the natives, landed on the ifland; and the king, who had put himfelf at the head of his troops to oppofe the enemy, having fallen in battle, the Chinefe pillaged, facked and burnt the royal city, made more than five thoufand flaves, and returned to China.

The emperors of the dynafty of Tang, thofe of the fhort dynafties that followed, and thofe of the dynafty of Song, although they were fully informed of every thing. refpecting the

[^2]342 GENERAL DESCRIPTION
Lieou-kieou ifles, made no attempts to render them tributary. In 1291, Cbi-tfou, emperor of the dynafty of $Y_{\text {ven }}$, was defirous of reviving the pretenfions of his predeceffors. He fitted out a fleet to fubdue thefe inlands; but fchemes of conqueft had become difagreeable to the Chinefe, fince the difafter that befel their army in an expedition againft Japan. The fleet of Cbi-tfou went no farther than the illes of Pongbou, and the weftern coaft of Formofa, from whence, under divers pretences, they returned to the ports of Fo-kien.

It was only in 1372, under the rign of Hong-vou, founder of the dynafty of Ming, that thefe inlands fubmitted voluntarily to the Chinefe government. Hong-vou had fent one of the grandees of his court to TJay-tou, who was then reigning at Lieou-kieou, to inform him of his acceffion to the throne. The Chinefe nobleman had received particular inftructions refpecting this commiffion, and he acquitted himfelf of it with all the prudence and addrefs of an able minifter. In a private audience which he had with Tjay-tou, he exhorted this prince to declare himfelf a tributary of the empire, and laid before him the advantages he would derive from this ftep. His reafoning, fupported
by the power of his natural eloquence, made fo much impreffion on the mind of $T_{f a y-t o u,}$ that he embraced the propofal made him, and fent immediately to the emperor to demand the inveftiture of his ftates.

Hong-vou received his envoys in amagnificent manner, and loaded them with prefents. He folemnly declared TJay-tou a vaffal of the empire ; and, after having received his firft tribute (which confifted in valuable horfes, aromatic wood, fulphur, copper, tin, \&c.) he fent to this prince a golden feal, and confirmed the choice he had made of one of his fons for lucceffor. The emperor afterwards fent thirty-fix families, almoft all from the province of Fo kien, to Licou-kieon. Tfay-tou received them, affigned them linds near the port of Napa-kiang, and appointed certain revenues for their ufe, at the fame time that Hong-vou made them confiderable remittances. Thefe families firft introduced into Lieou-kicou the learned language of the Chinefe, the ufe of their characters, and the ceremonies practifed in China in honour of Confucius. On the other hand, the fons of feveral of the grandees of the court of $T_{j a y-t o u}$ were fert to Nan-king, to ftudy Chinefe in the imperial college, where they were treated with expences.

The ifles of Licou-kieou had netther iron nor porcelain. IIonr-vou fupplied this want; he caufed a great number of utenfils of iron, and inftruments to be made, which he fent thither, together with a quantity of porcelain veffels. Commerce, navigation and the arts foon began to flourih. Thefe illanders learnicd to caft bells for their temples, to manufacture paper and the fineft ftuffs, and to make porcelain, with which they had been fupplied before from Japan.

The celcbrated revolution which placed the Tartars on the imperial throne of China, produced no change in the conduct of the kings of Lemb-kiert. 'Coug-trle, who was then reigning, ient embafindors to acknowledge Cbun-tchi, and received a feal from him, on which were engraven fome Taytar characters. It was then fettled, that the king of Lieon-kiens fhould pay his tribute only every two years, and that the number of pertons it the train of his curnys fhould not exceed one hundred and fify.

The emperor $k=2 n\}-h i$ feemed to pay more attention to thefe ales than sny of his predeceffors. He caufed a fupcrb palace to be eiected
in honour of Confucius, and a college, where he maintained mafters to teach the fciences and the Chinefe characters. He alfo inftituted examinations for the different degrees of the literati. He ordained, that the king of Lieou-kieou fhould never fend in tribute rofe-wood, cloves, or any other production which was not really of the growth of the country; but, that he fhould fend a fixed quantity of fulphar, copper, tin, fhells, and mother of pearl, which is remarkably pretty in thefe iflands. He permitted, that, befides the ufual tribute, he might prefent him horfe-furniture, piftol-cafes, and other things of the fame kind, which thefe iflanders are faid to manufacture with great tafte and neatnefs.

We could here give fome account of the lives of the different princes who have reigned in Lieou-kicou ; but, as the hiftory of the nations tributary to China, does not properly belong to this work, we fhall content ourfelves with prcfenting a chronological table of thefe kings, taken from the relation of the Chinefe doctor Supao-koang.

## CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE

## OFTHE

## KINGS of LIEOU-KIEOU, <br> F20円 TLE

Yearirifyafter J.ChRIST, to the prefent Centurt.

| Names of the Kings, | Began to reign A. D. | Age. |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Chun-tien - | 1187 | Died aged 72 years | 51 |
| Chur-ma-chuni, fon of Cbun-tuen | 1238 | Died ajed $6 f$ years | II |
| Y-pen, fore of Cbur-mu-chuns. | 1249 |  |  |
| Yn-tiou • . . | 1260 | Dicdaged 7 r years | 43 |
| Ta-tcheng, forn of $Y^{\text {r-ifout }}$, . | 1301 | - | 9 |
| Yn-tfe, fecond fon of Ta-tching | 1309 | - . . - | 5 |
| Yu-tching, fourth fon of $\gamma_{n-t f e}$. . | 1314 | - - - . | 23 |
|  | 1337 | Died aged 27 year | 14 |
| Thay-tou - . . . | 1350 | . . . . . . | 46 |
| Ou-mine, fon of $\overrightarrow{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{l} \mathrm{y}$ utu . . | $139^{6}$ |  |  |
| If then, fon of $\mathrm{O}_{4}+\boldsymbol{t} \boldsymbol{\prime} \mathrm{g}$ | 1406 | - . - . | 36 |
| Chang-pu-hhi, fon of 7 fr-tchao | 7424 | Died aged 68 years | 18 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { Cfank-thions ficond for of Chang-pa. } \\ & \text { th } \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot \end{aligned}$ | 1440 | Died aged 54 years | 5 |
| Chang-tict, fon of Cbung-f, hong | 1.445 | Dicd without chuldren, tged 42 years | 5 |
| Chang-hin-fout, uncle, bo the facber's <br>  | 1450 | Died aged 52 years | 4 |
| Changral-k ${ }^{-}$ou, brothes of Chong kanfte. | 1454 | Died aged 46 years | 7 |
| Chang-tc, thitajor of Chang-du-hacter | 1461 | Died aged 29 years | 9 |
| Chang-s-4, ${ }^{\text {Chan }}$ - - . . - | 1470 | Djed aged 62 years | 7 |
| Chang-tchag, fur of Chang y-zern . | 1477 | Dicd aged 62 years | 50 |
| Chang-tinc, thind fon of Cbang-tcbing | 1527 | Dicd aged 59 years | 29 |
| Chanisy ven, focond fors of Chaxg-t/ig | ${ }^{1} 55^{5}$ | Died aged 45 ycars | 17 |
| Chang-yong, fecond fon of Cbang-y'tun | 1573 | Dicd aged 35 yens | 16 |
| Chang-ning, grandfon of Cbung-tfong | 1588 | Died aged 57)6ars | 32 |
| Chang-fong, degended from a brotber of Ching-yorg . | 1621 | Died aged 51 years | 20 |
| Chung-hien, thid fon of Coams-fong | 1641 | Died aged 23 years | 7 |
| Chang-tche, bothir of Chang-bick | 1648 | Died aged 40 years | 21 |
| Chang-twing, fon of Cbarg-bien . . | 1669 | Died aged 65 years | 41 |
| Chang-fen, grandfon of Clang-tcbing | 1710 | Dicd ased 34 y ears | 3 |
| Chang-king, fon of Cbang-pen . . | 1713 |  |  |

IT is more than nine hundred years fince the bonzes of China introduced at Lieou-kicou the worfhip of Fo , and the principal books belonging to their fect. This worfhip is at prefent the eftablifhed religion both of the grandees and of the people. There is ftill to be feen in the royal city a magnificent temple, erected in honour of another idol borrowed from the Chinefe, named Tien-fey, which fignifies celeftial queen, or lady. We fhall fpeak of it when we come to the religion of the Chinefe.

Thefe iflanders do not make promifes or fwear'before their idols. When they have occafion to do this, they burn perfumes, prefent ${ }^{-}$ fruits, and ftand refpeatfully before fome ftone, which they call to witnefs the folemnity of their engagements. Numbers of ftonice are to be feen in the courts of their temples, in moft public places, and upon their mountains, which are entirely appropriated to this purpofe. They have alfo among them women confecrated for the worlhip of firits, who are fuppofed to have great influence over thefe beings. They vifit the fick, diftribute medicines, and recite prayers for their recovery.

They refpect the dead as much as the Chinefe, and they are no lefs ceremonious in wear-

348 GENERAL DESCRIPTION
ing mourning ; but their funerals are neither fo pompous, nor attended with fo $m$ much expence. Their coffins, which are of an hexagonal or octagonal figure, are three or four feet high. They burn the flefh of the bodies of their dead, and preferve only the bones. They never offer provifions to them; they are contented with placing lamps round them, and burning perfumes.

Different fomilies are diftinguifhed in Lieoukieou by furnames, as in China; but a man and a woman of the fame furname cannot be united in marriage. The king is not permitted to marry but in the three grand families, which always enjoy the higheft offices. There is a fourth, of equal diftinction to the three former; but neither the king nor the princes contract any alliances with this family; for it is doubtfui, whether it be not fprung from the fame flem as the royal line.

A plurality of wives is allowed in thefe ifles. Young men and young women enjoy the liberty of feeing one another, and of converfing together ; and their union is always in confequence of their own choice. The women are very referved; they never ufe paint, and wear no pendants in their ears; they collect their
hair on the top of their heads, in the form of a curl, and fix it in that manner by means of long pins made of gold or filver.

Befides the vaft domains which the king porfeffes, he receives the produce of all the fulphur, copper and tin-mines, and of the falt-pits, together with what arifes from taxes. From thefe revenues he pays the fularies of the mandarins and officers of his court. Thefe falaries are eftimated at a certain number of facks of rice; but under this name is comprchended whatever the king gives in grain, rice, filk, cloth, \&c. The whole is valued according to the price of the facks of rice.

There are here, as in China, nine orders of mandarins, who are diftinguifhed by the colour of their caps, or by their girdles and cufhions. The greater part of the titles of thefe mandarins are hereditary in their families; but there are fome which are only beftowed upon merit. In the royal city there are tribunals eftablifhed for managing the revenue and affairs of the principal inland, and of all the others which are dependant on it. The latter have agents, who refide at court. There are alfo particular tribunals for civil and criminal matters; for whatever concerns the families of the grandees and
$35^{\circ}$ GENERAL DESCRIPTION princes; for the affairs of religion; for infpecting the public granaries, king's revenues, duties; for commerce, manufactures, civil ceremonies, and for navigation, public edifices, literature, and war.

The veffels that are built in this country are greatly valued by the people of China and Japan. In thefe the natives go not only from one ifland to another, but alfo to China, Tong-king, Cochinchina, Corea, Nanga-za-kl, Satfuma, the neighbouring illes, and to Formofa, where they difpofe of their different commodities. Befides thofe articles of commerce, which their manufactories of filk, cotton, paper, arms, copper utenfils, \&c. furnifh them, they alfo export mother of pearl, tortoife and other fhells, coral and whet-ftones, which are in great requeft both in China and Jopan.

Three different languages are fpoken in the illes of Lieou-kieou, none of which is either that of China or Japan. The language of the large illand is the fame as that of the neighbouring iflcs; but it differs from thofe of the illes which fie to the fouth-weft and north-eaf. Letters, accounts, and all the king's ordess, are writter in Japanefe characters, and in the language of the country; books of morality, hiftory, medicine,
ccine, aftronomy and aftrology, are written in Chinefe characters. The diftribution of the year, and the divifion of time, are the fame in Lieou-kieou as in China. The people here follow the calendar of the empire; and the words they ufe to exprefs hours, days, years and the figns of the zodiac, have exactly the fame fignification.

Their edifices, temples, and the palace of their kings, are built after the Japanefe manner; but the houfes of the Chinefe, the hotel of their embaffador, the imperial college, and the temple of the goddefs Tien-fey, are built after the Chinefe. In many of their temples and public buildings, there are tables of fone or marble, on which are engraven Chinefe characters in honour of Chinefe emperors, from Hong-vou to the prefent time. Chinefe infcriptions are alfo to be feen on their triumphal arches and in the king's palace ; feveral are even found in Japanefe characters, and fome, but the number is few, in thofe of Indid.

The natives of Lieou-kizou are, in generad, mild, affable and temperate; they are active and laborious, enemies in flavery, and deteft falfehood and difhonefty. Excepring the grandees, bonzes and Chinefe eftablifhed at Lieou-kieou,

35 GENEPAL DERCRIPTION
few of the inhabitants of thefe illands can either write or read. If it happens, that any of the peafants, artifts or foldiers can dc either, they are obliged to thave their heads, as the bonzes. All others have a kind of tuft on the top of their heads, around which is a circle of very fhort hair. Thefe people are fond cf games and diverfions. They celcbrate, with great pomp and fplendour, thofe feftivals that are inftituted in honour of their idols, and thofe which are appointed for the ending and commencement of the year.

Great harmony prevails among families and individuals, which thcy take care to preforve by frequent repafts, to which they invite one another. Suicide is unknown among theie illanders; and they are free from thofe crimes that are common in the ifles fituated to the north-eaft of them, which, being nearer to Japan, have adopted the vices of its inhabitants, as well as their manners and cuftoms.

## B $\quad \mathrm{O} \quad \mathrm{O} \quad \mathrm{K} \quad$ IV.

Natural History of China.

> C H A P.

CLIMATE OF CHINA; ITS MOUNTAINS, LAKES AND RIVERS.

CHINA is fo extenfive, that all its provinces cannot enjoy the fame temperature ; their climate, and the nature of their foil, are therefore various, according as they are nearer or more remote from the fouth; fevere cold is felt at Pe -king, while the fouthern provinces are expofed to exceffive heat: the air however is in general wholefome, and the people commonly live to a great age.

The principal mountains of China are thofe in the northern and weftern parts of the empire. The latter are rendered fruitful by the labour Vox. I. A a and

## 354. GENERAL DESCRIPTION

and induftry of the Chinefe hufbandman ; but the former, which are barren and rocky, being incapable of improvement, remain without cultivation. Thofe of the provinces of Chen-fi, Ho-nan, Quang-tong and Fo-kien, fhew few figns of culture; but they are covered with forefs that abound with tall, itraight trees of every fpecics, which are fit for building, and particularly adapted for mafts and thip-timber. The emperor ufes them for lis private edifices; and he fometimes procures from thefe mountains enormous trunks, which he caufes to be tranfported to the diftance of three hundred leagues, both by land and water carriage, to be employed in his palace, or for public works. Other mountains are no lcfs ufeful, on account of the quickfilver, iron, tin, copper, gold and filver mines which they contain. Wifdom and political forefight have long prevented the latter from being opened. The prudent chiefs of the early dynalties, well aware that artiticial and ideal riches could not form a folid bafe for the happinefs of itates, were afraid of opening theie fources of luxury, left the pcople fhould be induced to neglect the natural riches of their foil, by applying to other labours than thofe of agriculture. About the commencement of the
ffiteenth century, the emperor $\mathcal{T} c$ bing- $t f o w$ caufed a mine of precious ftones to be fhut, which had been opened by a private individual. Ufelefs labours, faid this prince, produce ferility; a mone of precious flones does not furnifh rorn. At prefent, the Chincle are not fo fcrupulous; and it is certain, that they carry on a great trade in gold.

The Chinefe relate fome fingular and cxtraordinary phenomend of their mountains, which give us juft reafon to fufpect them of credulity. There are feveral, fay they, which produce nothing but ufeful and follutary berbs, and where notking elfe will grow. They affure us, that others have the property of rendering thofe immortal who retire to them; that a mountain of Chen-fi, which has the figure of a large cock, crows fometimes fo loud, that it may be heard at the diftance of three leagues; that another, in the province of Fo-kien, trembles when the heavens threaten a ftorm, and moves backwards and forwards, in the fame manner as a tree agitated by the wind. Another is feen, in the province of Kiang-fi, called The Dragon Tyger, becaufe the bonzes pretend, that its fummit, which has the figure of a dragon, darts upon the lower part, which refembles a tyger. But the Chinefe admire, above all others, a moun-
A a 2 tain
$35^{6}$ GENERAL DESCRIPTION
tain of Fo-kien, the whole of which is an idol, or ftatue of the god Fo. This coloffus is of fo monftrous a fize, that each of its eyes is feveral miles in circumference, and its nofe, feveral leagues in extent. It is very extraordinary, that the Chinefe, who confider a flat nofe as a beauty, fhould have given their favourite idol a nofe of fo prodigious a length. It evidently appears, that the fhape of this mountain is not the work of art. What they relate of a mountain of Chen-fi is no lefs wonderful : it vomits up flames, and excites rain, wind and ftorms, whenever any one beats a drum or plays on a mufical inftrument near it.

The principal lakes of China are the Ting-ting-bou, fituated in the province of Hou-quang, which is more than eighty leagues in circumference; the Tai-bou, part of which extends into Kiang-nan; the Hang-tfe, and the Kao-yeou, of the province of Kiang-nan; and the Poyangbou, formed in Kiang- $\sqrt{2}$ by the confluence of four confiderable rivers, which, like the fea, is fubject to tempefts and forms. This lake is near an hundred leagues in length.

Among an infinitude of great and fmall rivers that water this vaft kingdom, there are wo particularly celebrated. The firft is the

## OF CHINA.

357
Jang-tfe-kiang, or Son of the Sea. It has its fource in the province of Yun-nan, traverfes thofe of Hou-quang and Kiung-nan, and, after having watered four provinces, through an extent of four hundred leagues, it throws itfelf into the eaftern fea, oppofite the ifle of Tfong-ming, which is formed by the fand accumulated at its mouth. The Chinefe fay, proverbially, The jea has no flore, and the Kiang is without a bottom. Before Nan-king, and at the diftance of more than thirty leagues from its mouth, this river is half a league broad. The navigationof it is dangerous, and numbers of veffels are loft in it almoft every day. It flows with great rapidity, and forms in its courfe feveral iflands, which are beneficial to the province, on account of the multitude of reeds, from ten to twelve feet in height, which they produce, and which are ufed for fuel in all the neighbouring cities. But when the Kiang is fwelled by torrents from the mountains, it becomes fo impetuous, that it overflows and carries away the greater part of thefe illands, and forms others from theif"wrecks in thofe places of its bed where it leaves them.

The other great river of China is the Hoangbo, or Yellow River. The Chinefe give it this A a 3 name,
$35^{8}$ GENERAL DEECPIPTION
name, becaufe the clay and fand which it wafhes down, efpecially in time of rain, make its water appear of a yeliow colour. It arifes in the mountains which border the province of $\mathcal{T e}$-tchuen on the welt, and, after a courfe of neally 600 leagues macofs Tartary and China, difcharges itfelf into the eaftern fea, not far from the mouth of the Kiang. It is very broad and rap.d; but it is fo fhallow, that it is fearcely navigable It often happens, that it overflows its banks, and buries whole villages; and it has been found neceffary, in order to confine it, to raife, in feveral places, long and frong dikes, which however do not entirely free the cities in its neighbou:hood from the dread of its inundations. For the fame reafon, the poople of the prevince of Ho-nan, the land of which is exceedingly low, have taken the precaution to furround moft of their cities, at the diftance of three furlongs, with ftrong ramparts of earth faced with turf.

The ingenuity which the Chinefe difplay in turning the happy fituation of their lakes and rivers to the greatelt advantage, is worthy of admiration. One of their principal works for the convenience of commerce, is the celebrated canal which reaches from Canton as far as Pe king, and which forms a communication ber
*ween all the fouthern and northern provinces. This work, which is called The Royal Canal, is fix hundred leagues in length; and itsnavigation is no where interrupted but by the mountain Melling, where paffengers are obliged to trawel ten or twelve leagues over land. They however have no occafion to quit their barks when they direct their courfe through the provinces of Quang-fi and Hou-quang. It may eafily be perceived, what immenfe labour it muit have coft, to form a communication between fo many xivers, and how many obftacles muft have occurred in the execution of a canal of fo great extent; works of various kinds, locks, dikes, and moles of cut ftone, have every where overcome the refiftance of nature. In this principal canal, a number of others end, which ftretch out into the country, and form a communication between the neighbouning cities, towns and villages. The greater part of thofe private canals have been execured by the induftry of the inhabitants of thefe cities and towns, who have fpared neither labour nor expences to procure themfelves the valuable advantage of having an eafy conveyance for their grods into all the provinces of the empire. 'The patience and perfeverance of the Chinefe in thefe ufeful enterAa4 prizes,

360 general description prizes, have even furmouhted obftacles that perhaps would have difcouraged any other people. Such, for example, is part of a canal which conducts from Cbao-bing to Ning- $p$ o. Near thefe cities, there are two canals, the waters of which do not communicate, and which differ ten or twelve feet in their level. To render this place paffable for boats, the Chinefe have conftructed a double glacis of large ftones, or rather, two inclined planes, which unite in an acute angle at their upper extremity, and extend on each fide to the furface of the water. If the bark is in the lower canal, they pufh it up the plane of the firt glacis, by means of feveral capftans, until it is raifed to the angle, when, by its own weight, it glides down the fecond glacis, and precipitates itfelf into the water of the higher canal, with the velocity of an arrow. It is aftonifhing, that thefe barks, which are generally very long and heavily laden, never burft afunder when they are balanced in the air upon this acute angle. However, we never hear that any accident happens in this paffage. It is true, they take the precaution of ufing for the keels of thefe barks a kind of wood which is exceedingly hard and proper for refifting the violence of fuch an effort.

We fhall relate a remarkable phenomenon of a Chinefe river, which was obferved by Father le Coutcux, a French miffionary. This river flows towards Cbe-pai, a large village fituated below Ngan-lo in the province of Hou-quang. 'Some leagues above the village of Cbe-pai,' fays this miffionary, ' the river becomes confi' derably finaller although none of its waters ' flow into any other channel; and eight or nine ' leagues below, it refumes its former breadth, ' without receiving any additional fupply but ' what it gets from a few fmall rivulets, which ' are almoft dry during the greater part of the ' year; oppofite Che-pai, it is fo much dimi' nifhed, that, excepting one channel, which is ' not very broad, I have paffed and repaffed it fe' veral times by the help of a common pole. I ' was always furprifed to find this river fo fhal' low and narrow in that place; but I never ' thought of inquiring into the caufe of it, until ' the lofs of a bark belonging to a Chriftian fa' mily afforded me an opportunity. In that place ' where the river diminithes almoft of a fưdden, ' it flows with great impetuofity;; and where it ' refumes its former breadth, it is equally rapid. ' At the fixth moon, when the water was high ' and the wind ftrong, the bark I have men-- tioned,
' tioned, arriving above Che-pai, was driven on ' a fand-bank; for, between thefe two places, ' the river is full of moveable fands, which are ' continually fhifting their fituation. The mafter ' of the boat dropt his anchor, until the wind ' Ghould abate and permit him to continue his ' voyage; but a violent vortex of moveable ' fand, which was caft up from the bottom of ' the river, laid the bark on its fide; a fecond - vortex fucceeded; then a third; and after' wards a fourth, which fhattered the bark to ' pieces. When I arrived at the place where this - bark had been loft, the weather was mild and : ferene ; I perceived eddies in the current every - where around, which abforbed and carried to - the bottom of the river whatever floated on its ' furface; and I at the fame time obferved, that ' the fand was violently thrown up with a vor' tical motion. Above thefe eddies, the water s was rapid, but without any fall. In the place - below where the river refumes its ufual

- breadth, there were no eddies to be feen; but ' the fand was thrown up in the fame violent - manner, and in fome places, there were water-- falls, and a kind of finall inlands, fcattered at - fome diftance one from another. Thefe illands,
' which appeat above the furface of the waz
' ter, are not folid earth ; they confift only of
' branches of trees, roots, reeds and herbs that are
- collectet' and united together. A Chriftian of
' that place, who was in my bark, pointed them
- out to me, and told me, that thefe boughs rofe
' up from the water, and that no one knew
- from what place they came. He informed me,
- that thefe maffes, which were forty or fifry
' fect in extent on that fide where we paffed,
' were immovable, and lixed to the bottom of
' the river ; that it was dangerous to approach
' too near them, becaule the water formed
' whirlpools evcry where around them ; that,
' however, when the river was very low, the
' fifhermen fometimes ventured to collect the
' bufhes that floated on its furface, which they ' ufed for fuel.
' My conjecture concerning this phenome-
' non is as follows: I am of opinion, that, at
' the place of the river which is above $C b c-p a i$,
' the water falls into deep pits, from which it
' forces up the fand with that vortical motion; ' and that it flows under ground to the other : place, eight or nine leagues below, where it ' carries with it all the boughs, weeds and roots ' which it wathes downt in its courfe, and thus - forms thoie illands which appear above it - furface.


## 64 grneral description

- furface. We know there are fome rivers that
- lofe themfelves entirely, or in part, in the
- bowels of the earth, and which afterwards
- arife in fome other place; but I belicve there
- never was one known to lofe part of its water
- below its own channel, and again to recover
' it at the diftance of fome leagucs.'


## C H A P. II.

population of china.

THE ancient prejudices of Europe a a ainft China are not yet entirely obliterated. Although the relations which we have of this cmpire are numerous, and though the different accounts given by French, Italian, Spaniih, Ruffian and German writers, feem perfectly to agree, we ftill fufpect, that a good deal of exaggeration is mixed with truth in what travellers relate to us concerning this remote nation. One of thefe things which have been thought moft incredible and contradictory by Europeans, is the prodigious population of China. Father Amiot has been at great pains to inveftigate this point, which hitherto has been examined with
too little attention. It is evident from his calculations, that China contains at prefent two hundred millions of inhabitants. This enormous population may appear aftonifhing; but, when we have weighed the proofs and followed the reafoning which this learned miffionary makes ufe of, we fhall find that his account is by no means exaggerated. The lifts and documents on which this interefting difcuffion is founded, are taken from a Chinefe book, entitled Tai-tfing-y-toung-tche-An Account of what is effential to be known refpesting. China. 'This work was compofed and arranged by order of the prefent emperor Kien-long, and publifhed in the eighth year of his reign, in more than an hundred volumes, enclofd in twenty-four tao, or covers. This Chinefe book is one of thofe which are found in the king's library at Paris. The book entitled 1 -toung-tche thews only the number of thote taxable in every province of the empire ; but, by knowing this number, we may nearly afcertain that of the individuals who compofe the nation.

## STATE OFTHOSFTAXABLEINTHE DIFFERENT PROVINCESOF CHINA, IN THE EIGHTHYEAR OF THEREIGN OF KIEN-LONG, OR IN 1743.

| Prowinces. | Number of thofe tixable |
| :---: | :---: |
| Pe-tchel, the cty of Pe-ktug not thetawled | 3,3, 5,553 |
| Chang-tong . . . . . . . . . | 2,431,936 |
| Quang-tong, or Leao-tong - . . | 47,124 |
| $\left.\begin{array}{c}\text { Kiang-nan, derved into } \\ \text { truo provinces, }\end{array}\right\} \begin{aligned} & \text { Klans-fou } \\ & \text { and Ngan-hoei }\end{aligned}$. | $\begin{aligned} & 2,917,707 \\ & 2,435,566 \end{aligned}$ |
| Ho-nan . . . . . . - | 2,5:7,455 |
| Chan-fi | 1,793,895 |
| Tche-kıang . . . . . . . . . . . | 3,124,798 |
|  | 2,252,549 |
| Kan-fou (thus is a part of Chen-fi) comprebends the Cbutefe fammiles eflablyhed avtbout the great wall | 703,258 |
| Klang-fil . . . . . . . . | 1,336,270 |
| Quang-tong, commonly callid Canton . . . | 1,201,320 |
| Quang-fi . . . . . . . . . . . | 228,690 |
| Hou-quang, divided into Hou-pe and Mou-nan | 852,970 |
| Yun-nan - . . . | 237,96; |
| Kouer-tcheou . . | 51,089 |
| Se-tchuen . . . . . . . . . . | 3,036,342 |
| By adding all thefe fums, we fhall have, for the whole number of thofe who pard taxes, twenty-eight mithons, five hundied and fixteen thoufand, torir hundred |  |
| - and erghty-eight . . . . . . . | 28,516,488 |

But it muft be remarked, that, by the word taxable, which the political code of the Chinefe expreffes by that of fin-ting, the heads of families only are underftood. When they have occalion to mention the number of individuals, the
the Chinefe make ufe of the word mouths, and fay, for example, that fuch a city, village, or hamlet, contains fo many mouths. If a family confifts of ten or five mouths, or even of two, the name of the head is only enrolled, becaufe it is the head alone whom they confider as taxable. They reckon neither women, children nor domeftics, much lefs flaves. The Chinefe think that they come pretty near the truth, when they allow the number of fix mouths to each family. Befides, long experience has convinced the mandarins, to whom the care of numbering the people, whether in great or in fmall cities, is affigned, that they muft keep to this calculation, which is the moft accurate for China. But let us be contented with a lower calculation, and let us fuppofe that there are only five mouths in each Chinefe family. If we multiply the number of taxables, or heads of families, which the Tribunal of Subjidies prefented to the emperor in 1743, we fhall have, fur the total of the mouths that compofe the families of the taxables, an hundred and forty-two millions, five haundred and eighty-two thoufand, four hundred and forty.

Father Amiot affures us, that it would not be exaggeration to fay, that this nutmber is only

368 GENERAL DESCRIPTION one half of the people contained in China. That we may be able to judge of the truth of this affertion, it will be neceflary to enter into details, and to make the following obfervations.

The mandarins are not included in the number of thofe taxable; and thefe mandarins, in a country of fo great extent as China, muft be (as they are indeed) very numerous. We fhall only mention the principal; that is to fay, thofe who hold fome rank in the empire, and who have a great many others fubordinate to therm, who alfo enjoy feveral immunities and privileges. Thefe principal mandarins are the go-vernors-general of provinces, eleven of whom have the title of tfong-tou, and fifteen, that of biun-fou. Next to them, are the treafurersgeneral, in number nineteen; after thefe, come the eighteen lieutenants-general of the Tribunal of Crimes; the feventeen infpecting judges, appointed for whatever concerns the literati; and one hundred and thirteen travelling commiffaries, whofe bufinefs is to watch over the conduct of the governors of cities. All thefe grand mandarins have others under them, diftinguifhed by different titles, who act as their counfellors, and affift them in the adminiftration of the affairs of, their refpective diftricts.

The treafurers-general have under them twen-ty-three mandarins. The lieutenants-general of the Tribunal of Crimes have forty affiftants for general affairs, eighteen who vifit prifons, and twenty-feven to make informations according to law. The travelling commiffaries have under their command cleven mandarins, who are obliged to lay before them the fate of the different public magazines which they vifit.

After thefe officers, who have a general power of infpecting all the prorinces of the empire, come the governors of citics of the firft, fecond and third clafs. The number of the firt is one hundred and feventy-nine; they have under them two hundred and four mandarins fyled toung-tche; one hundred and feventy-fix who have the title of toung-pan; two hundred and twenty, who have that of hing-ly; feventythree, called fee-you, who infpect the prifons, and manage every thing that relates to prifoners; ten cbrult la-cbe, who have the care of the general cuitom-houfes of the diltrict; twelve fou-choui-ta-che, who have the charge of thofe in the city; five $t$ fang-ta-che, who furvey the public granaries; and an hundred and eightyfix, who have the infpection of fehools.

Vol. I.
3 b
The

370 GENERAL DESCRIPTION
The governors of cities of the fecond clafs are in number two hundred and eleven; they have under them fixty-four tcheoi-touns; ninety tcheou-pan; two hundred and twenty-four $l y$ mou; four kotu-ta-che, to vifit the public magazines; four choui-ta-che, for the management of the cuftom-houfes; four tche-li-ting, and two hundred and feventeen liso-tching, to infpect fchools.

The governors of cities of the third clafs are in number twelve hundred and ninety-nine; they have under them four hundred and eighteen bien-tcheng; eleven hundred Eiao-yu; one thoufand five hundred and twenty buin-tao; an hundred and eight tchou-pou (thefe three laft orders of mandarins have no concern with any thing but the literati and fchools) ; nine hundred and fixty biun-kien, to conduct the affairs of the villages; twelve hundred and ninetyfeven tien-che; feven chotri-ta-che, to infpect the cuftom-houfes of the city; eight tfang-ta-che, to furvey the public granaries; fifty-five $y$-tchen, who have the management of the poft-offices; and forty-four $t c b a$-koan, who have the care of the fluices.

If we add all thefe together, we fhall find wat the whole number of mandarins appointed
by the emperor for the adminiftration of the affairs of all the provinces, amounts to 8,965 . But there is fill a great number of inferior rank who are appointed by the great mandarins. Although the political almanack makes no mention of them, we muft however include them in our reckoning, as well as other fubaltern officers whom they employ, becaufe they are not comprehended in the lift we have given of thofe taxable. By fuppofing their number to be ten times greater than that of their fuperiors, we thall even then be below what it in reality is. We muft therefore add 89,650 to the preceding number 8,965 , and we thall have, for the total of the mandarins, both fuperior and fubaltern, who are difperfed throughout the provinces of the empire, 98,615 . But all thefe individuals are accounted heads of families; and, as we have allowed the number of five mouths to each family, if we make the fame allowance for thofe of the mandarins, the refult will be 493,075 mouths, which we muft fill add to the number $142,582,440$, which we have already found, and the whole amount $\overline{\text { will }}$ be onc hundred and forty-three millions, feventy-five thoufand, five hundred and fifteen.

### 37.2 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

The literati form the moft diftinguinhed part of the Chincle mation. Since the dynafty of Han, that is to fay, for two thoufand years back, they have conftantly held the chief rank in the empire ; and it is always from among them that mafters are chofen for the education of youth ; minifters, for the adminiftration of public affairs; and magiftrates, for judging the people; in a word, the literati are, in fome meafure, the foul of the Chinefe nation, fince it is from them alone, that it receives its moral exiftence, and its civil and political being. The literati, then, muft be very numerous in a ftate where they enjoy every diftinction attached to pre-eminence, and where every thing favours their increafe. The juftnefs of this conclufion is demonftrated by facts. Since learning in China is the only means that conduft to honours, it is neccffary, that thofe who afpire to them, fhould cultivate letters; and they muft make it appear, that they have cultivated them with fuccefs, before they can obtain any civil employment. To guard againft impofition in this refpect, government has fixed, for every city of the firft, fecond and third clafs, the number of literati who can be legally promoted every year to the firft degree of literature, which

OF CHINA.
373
is that of feou-tfai, and which anfwers to bachelor of arts in our univerfities. Every fieou$t f a i$ is accounted noble, and is never enrolled among the taxables. We muft therefore endeavour to afcertain their number nearly, if we wih to know that of the inhabitants of China. Several pages, and even whole volumes, might be filled with the names of the cities alone which are obliged to furnifh cvery year their fixed number of graduates. All this lift of names is to be found in the political almanack which is printed at Pe-king four times a year. We fhall content ourfelves with adding the different numbers of fieou-t $f a i$, which each of the cities of a province is obliged to furnifh; and we fhall place the fum total oppofite their refpective provinces.

| Names of the Prounces. | Number of the Sieou tial |
| :---: | :---: |
| Pe-tcheli . | 2496 |
| Klang-fou . . . - | 1410 |
| Ngan-hoer . . . - . | 1285 |
| Klang-fi . . . . . . - . . . | 1356 |
| Tche-kiang . . . . . . . . | 1877 |
| Fou-hlen . . . . | 1166 |
| Hou-pe . . . . . . . . . . | 1102 |
| Hou-nan . . . . . . . . . | 1184 |
| Ho-rain . . . . . | 1669 |
| Chang-tong . . . . . . . . . | 1867 |
| Chan-fi . - . . . . . | 1559 |
| Chen-fi . . . . . . . . . - | 1127 |
| Kan-fou • . . . . . . . . . | 938 |
| Se-tchueh . . . . . . . . . . | 1446 |
| Quang-tong (Cantor) . . . . . . | - 343 |
| Quang- $\sqrt{1}$ - . . . . . . . . . | 773 |
| Yun-nan . . . . . . . . . . | 1:99 |
| Kouet-tcheou . | 704. |
| 'Total | 24701 |

There are, then, in China twenty-four thoufand feven hundred and one individuals who are every year introduced to the firft degree of literati; and we may fafely fuppofe the number of thofe admitted before, to be at leaft twenty times as great. According to this eftimation, there are always in China 494,020 literati, who have taken degrees, and who, confequently, are
not included among the taxables. Thefe literati are heads of families; and we have fuppofed. each fannily, according to the Chinefe expreffion, to contain five moutbs. If we multiply the above number of literati by five, we fhall have, for the number of mouths, $2,470,100$. If thefe two millions, four hundred and feventy thoufand, one hundred mouths, are added to our former number one hundred and forty-three millions, feventy-five thoufand, five hundred and fifteen, the amount will be one hundred and forty-five millions, five hundred and fortyfive thoufand, fix hundred and fifteen.

Next to the literati, are the military, who alfo enjoy immunity, and are not comprehended among the taxables. F. Amiot, for political reafons, which may be eafily gueffed, never ventured to make application to any of the tribunals who kcep a regifter of the troups maintained in the empire: the inquiry of a Aranger refpecting fo delicate a point, would, no doubt, have alarmed the weaknefs of the Chinefe; but, by proceeding in the fame manner as we have done to find the number of the literati, we may approach near enough the truth for our prefent purpofe. The following details are extrafted from the military alma-

$$
\text { B b } 4 \text { nack, }
$$

376 GENERAL DESCRIPTION
nack, which is alfo publifhed four times a year at Pe-king. In this almanack are contained the names, titles, places of abode, and the number of all the officers of the Chinefe militia. This number being known, we may thence partly afcertain that of the foldiers.

The officers who command all the troops of a province, are called $t y$-tou, and are in number

Other officers, fubordinate to the $t y$-tou, who command troops in the different cittes of each prowince, are diftinguifhed by different tutles.

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| Officers who have the | Ytou-k1 . . . . . 374 |
| title of . . . | Cheou-pei . . . . 828 |
|  | Tou-fee . . . . . 420 |
|  | Tfien-tfoung . . . 1617 |
|  | (Pa-tfoung . . . . 3457 |
|  | Total 706ı |

Befides thele officers, whofe refidence is fixed in cities of the firft, fecond and third clafs, there are fome who are alfo ftationed in the cities called ouei, which are furrounded with walls, but not fortified. The officers ftationed in there different cities, are,

Officers:


It muft be ubferved, that each of thefe officers, befides the foldiers who are immediately under his command, maintains alfo a number of other people, who belong to what is called his $y a-m e n$, or office ; that in each of thefe $y a-$ men, there are petty officers, to tranfimit his orders, and to fee them executed ; fectetarics and clerks, to keep a journal of every tranfaction ; and fubalterns of different kinds, who are always in waiting, and ready in cafe of neceffity. The number of thefe individuals is in proportion to that of the officers whofe office they belong to, at leaft as ten to one. Let us therefore multiply the number of officers by ten; and we fhall have 74,1 Io.

It is neceffary to obferve farther, that no mention is made in the military almanack, of thofe inferior officers who in China are called suai-ouei, and may be compared to our lieu- tou have power of raifing to the higheft military rank fuch of the foldiers as have diftinguifhed thenfelves, either by their valour or a punctual difcharge of their duty. As we neither know the number of thefe officers, nor that of thofe who are either in garrifon in the different cities, or pofted at certain diftances on all the great roads, to protect travellers, and to make fignals by fire in cafe of neceffity, we fhall fuppofe, according to our method of calculation, which is always below reality, that the number of thefe men is to that of the officers as an hundred to one. This eftimation will give us the number $74 \mathrm{I}, 100$, which, added to the preceding, will produce, for the total of the officers, foldiers and others who compore the Chinefe militia *, 822,621.

The foldiers in China are heads of families, like all the other individuals of the nation; we muft therefore multiply their number by five, and we fhall have, for the fum total of mouths,

[^3]whb, on account of their military privilege, are not included in the number of taxables, $4,1 \mathrm{I}, 105$. Let us therefore add this number to that of the mouths already found, $145,545,615$; and we fhall have one hundred and forty-nine millions, fix hundred and fiftyeight thoufand, feven hundred and twenty.
' We ftill want,' fays F. Amiot, 'above - fifty millions, to complete the two hundred - millions and more that I have affigned as the ' number of the inhabitants of China.-But, * where fhall we find them? The author of『Recherches philosophigues surlesEotpك tiens et les Chinots (Mr. Paw) will, no doubt, permit us to take them from among sthofe robbers who infeft the public roads of the - empire, even to the environs of Canton; from 'among thofe troglodytes who are found there in - fo great numbers; from among thofe wander${ }^{6}$ ing families who defert the interior part of the ${ }^{6}$ coluntry, and go to live in the neigbbourbood of - commercial cities, whither they are led by a thirft ' of gain; and from among thofe mendicant monks, - cunuchs and faves ; to whom we may alfo join - the blind females and bonveffes, whom he igno© rantly confounds with thofe unhappy victims d whom libertinifm and poverty have configned

380 GENERAL DESCRHPTION
6 to infamy and proftitution; and, if all there 6 are not fufficient, we fhall add to them that

- multitude of people who are employed in the - different cuftom-houfes, and who, we know,

6 amount to a very great number; but, above 6 all, the inhabitants of thofe floating cities, who - live in barks, or on ralts, and feem to form a

6 diftinct nation in the middle of the empire.

- Among all thofe whom I have already num-

6 bered, no mention has been made of the in6 habitants of Pe-king, who certainly amount
6 to two millions; or of the Mantchews who
6 live among the Chinefe to reftrain and govern
, them ; or of the various artifts, and manufac4 turers of filk, who in number muft be propor-
6 tionable not only to the inhabitants of the s country for which they labour, but alfo to 6 thofe of foreign nations who load their veffels 6 every year with the fruits of their induftry;
6 or of thofe petty traders who fwarm in all the
6 towns and villages of the empire; or, laftly,
6 of the lower claffes of the people, who com' pore here (as is the cafe every where elfe) ' what is called the bulk of the nation.'

We muf here obferve, that there is a confiderable deficiency in the calculations of $F$. Amiot, who, in reckoning up the number of
thofe taxabie in all the provinces of the empire; makes no mention of the province of Fou-kien. This fingular omiffion is not intentional ; it can only be the effect of hafte or forgetfulnefs. The number of thofe taxable in Fou-kien in the year 1743, when the regifter before mentioned was taken, amounted to $1,528,607$. If we multiply this number of heads of families by five, we fhall have, for that of the moutbs in Fou-kien, $7,643,035$; and if we add this number to the total of moutbs found already, 149,658,720, we fhall have $157,301,755$.

This was the ftate of the population of China in 1743 , the jeur in which the book entitled $r$-toung-tche was publifhed; but this population muft have been confidcrably increafed fince that epocha, becaufe it is remarked, that it continues to make a fenfible progrefs in China: this is even proved by the book $r_{\text {-toung-tche }}$ itfelf, which compares the refule of two numberings, and fays, At ithe laft numbering which, was made of thofe taxable in each province, the: amounted to fo many; and their number has increafed by fo many fince. We greatly wih, that the year in which this laft numbering was made, had been mentioned; as it has not, and, 2s we know that it was formerly cuftomary to

382 GENERAL DESCRIPTION
announce to the emperor every year the flate of the population of his empire, we may fup, pofe that this laft numbering was made in the feventh year of the reign of Kien-Long ; that is to fay, in 1743. But, that we may confine ourfelves to the loweft eftimation we can, let us fuppofe this laft numbering to have been made as far back as poffible ; that is to fay, in the firt year of the reign of Kien-long, or in 4736. Let us then fee, after the comparifon of the $\gamma$-toung-che, what was the population in 1736 , and how much it had increafed in 1743 .

| State of thore taxable in 1736. |  | Increafe of the <br> Number of T ax, <br> ables un 5743 - |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Pe-tcheh | 3,292,643 | 47,910 |
| Chang-tong - | 2,278,982 | 152,954 |
| Kang-fou . . . . | 2,821,146 | 96,56r |
| Ngan-hoei . . - | 1,407,285 | 28,28x |
| Ho-nan . | 2,289,875 | ${ }^{237}$, $5^{81}$ |
| Chan-fi - | 1,758,635 | 35,259 |
| Tche-hang . . | 2,937, ${ }^{2} 99$ | 186,899 |
| Chen-fil | 2,1492890 | 4,469 |
| Kan-fou . . . . . - | 304,249 | 7,723 |
| Kinng fi . | 1,308,724 | 19,775 |
| Hou-nan . . . - | 368,008 | 7,774 |
| Hut-pe - - . | 454,417 | 22,771 |
| Fou-kıen . . | 1,463,6, 5 | 59,992 |
| Koang-toung - . . | 1,179,630 | 21,690 |
| Koang-fi - | 205,995 | 4,4,695 |
| Yun-nan - . | 185,865 | 52,100 |
| Kouen-tcheou . - | 37,536 | 4,553 |

## OF CEINA.

This increafe of population is fill more fenfible in Se-tchuen. In that province there were formerly one hundred and forty-four thoufand, one hundred and fifty-four families enrolled as fit to pay taxes; but at prefent it contains three millions, thirty-fix thoufand, three hundred and forty-two. This enormous increafe, no doubt, proceeds from the great number of families, who, upon the invalion by the Tartars, retired into the mountains of that province, and eftablifhed themfelves there. The increafc in the provinces of Cben-fi and Kan-fou is, no doubt, owing to a fimilar caufe-ithe number of families that took refuge there at the fame epocha. Thefe different augmentations, of which an accurate account was kept for feveral years, occalioned numberlefs difficulties in the collecting of the taxes. Thefe difficulties, added to thofe refulting from the great number of exempts, poor, itinerant tradefmen, people employed on the rivers, \&c. at length induced the emperor rons-tcling to abolifh the fon-ting, and to fubftitute in its room the TYyting; that is to fay, to change the capitation into a land-tax, in order that the revenues of the ftate might be aore fixed and certain, and that the collection

## OF CHINA <br> 385

are vertical. It is alfo neceffary to obferve, that the owan of the Chinefe is equal to ten thoufand.

## CHONG MIN CHOU

ALL THE PEOPLE NUMBERED.

| I. | Niu, women | , ${ }^{\text {a all }}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ong-tien | Kong, in all | 1, two |
| Ching, province | Y, one | Then, thoujand |
| Ta, jo eat | TGien, thoufand | Eul, tivo |
| Siao, little | Ou, fuc <br> Pei, hundi ed | Pal, hund |
| Nan, mer | Eul, | Che, $\}$ fer |
| Niu, zuamen | Che, $\}$ twenty | Leou, $\sqrt{x}$ |
| Kong, ${ }^{\text {n a all }}$ | Eul, $t$ vo | Ouan |
| 1 cour, ${ }_{\text {cher }}$ | Ou. ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | Y, oze |
| Che, | Eul, trus | Tfien, tho |
| Oran, ten thoufand | Thien, thoufand Kieou, nine | S.an, $\left.{ }_{\text {Che }}\right\}$ |
| Pa, crgbt | Pel, bundred | [22,76r,0j0.] |
| ${ }_{\mathbf{P}}^{\text {Thien, }}$, thoufand |  |  |
| Pa, eyght <br> Pei, hundicd | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Chi, }\}^{f 101} \text { ty } \\ & \left.\hline 152,94^{\circ}\right] \end{aligned}$ | Kiang. |
|  |  | Chingrovince |
| Eul, twod | Ngan-hort *. | Ta, great Sio, Sttle |
| [668,852.] |  | , |
| 11. | Ta, gicat | Niu , zuamen |
| che-ly $\dagger$ - | Siao, luttle | Kong, in all |
| Ching, prevince | Nan, men | Eul, two |
| Ta, great | Niu, wamen | Thien, thoufa |
| Siao, little <br> Nan, men | tang-nan | Per, bundred |
|  | es o one of which | , |
|  | called Ngan-hoet; the thei, Kiang-fou. | $\left.\begin{array}{l} \text { Che, ten, } \\ \text { Leou, } j v,\} \end{array}\right\}$ |
|  | C c | Ouan |


| Ouan | Ouan | Ouan |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Y, one | Kicou, $n$ 'ne | Leout, $/ 2 x$ |
| Tfien, thoufand | Then, thorfand | Pei, buthdred |
| Se, four | Leou, fix | San, three |
| Pei, bandred | $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{el}}$, bundy ed | [8,080,603.] |
| Kieou, ntue | Kıeou, $\}$ ninety | IX. |
| [23,161,408] | [15,429,690] | Hou-nan, |
| V. | [15,429,690] | Ching, province |
| Krang-st. | VII. | . . . . |
| Ching, province | Fou-kien. | . . . - . |
| T., i, orpat | Ching, Arovunce | Kona it all |
| S1do, lithle |  | Kong, ${ }^{2 n}$ all |
| Nan, ment |  | Pa, aight |
| Niu, evomen |  | Pex, bundred |
| Kong, in all | Kong, in all | Pa,$\}$ eighy |
| Y, one | Pa, eight | Che, ${ }^{\text {E }}$ |
| Tlien, thoufand | $\mathrm{Pc1}$, bundred | Eul, two |
| Y,one | Leou, fis | Ouan |
| Peı, bundred | Oun | Kreon, rine |
| Ouan | San, three | Then, thoufand |
| Lenu, for | Thien, thoufund | San, tbrec |
| Then, thonfand | Leou, $\sqrt{2 x}$ | Pei, bundred |
| Leou, fix | Pen , bundred | Eul, ${ }_{\text {reventy }}$ |
| Pel , bundred |  | Che, $\}$ reventy |
| Se, Chi, forty | Che, \}reventy | [8,8:9,320.] |
| $[11, \infty 06,640]$ | $\text { Y, one }\left[8,06_{3}, 671\right]$ | X . |
| VI. | VIII. | Chang-tong Ching, province |
| Tche-kian | Hou-pe | $\Gamma_{\mathrm{d}}, \text { ge eat }$ |
| Ching, prow ${ }^{\text {de }}$ | Chang, frovance | Siao, litile |
| Ta, great | Ta, great | Nan, men . |
| Sino, luttle | Sido, little | Niu, womers |
| Nan, men | Na'a, men | Kong, is all |
| Nuu, women | Niu, zuomen | Eul, two |
| Kong, in all | Kong, it all | Tfien, thoufand |
| Y, one | Pa , egght | Ou, fue |
| Thien, thoufand | Pei, bundred | Pex , bunited |
| Ou, fire | Pa, eight |  |
| Pei, bundred | Pa, ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | Che, eighteen |
| Che, $\}$ forty | * Hou-pe is divided | $\mathrm{Pa}, \mathrm{Y}$ <br> Ouan |
| "uly tivo | into two provinces, Hou- pe and Ho nan. | Tfin, feven |

Pai,

| Pei, bundred | Tfien, thoufand | Tfi, firen |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| San, $\}$ tbirty | Y, one, | Pei, bundred |
| Clue, \}tbirty | Pei, bundred | Se, 3 forty |
| Se , four |  | Che, \}forty |
| $[25,18 c, 734$. | Che, \} eighty | Y, one |
|  | Kieou, nine | Ouan |
| XI. | [9.768, 189.$]$ | Eul, tiwo |
| Ho-nan. | XIII. | '1 rien, thoufand |
| Ching prownme - - - | Si-ngan*. | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Y, } \\ & \text { She, } \end{aligned} \text { fourtecn }$ |
| - | Ching, prownce Ta, great | $[7,412,014 .]$ |
| Korse | Stao, little | XV. |
| Kong, $n$ all | Nan, me/2 | Se-tchouen. |
| Y, one | Nut, quomen | Se-tchouen. |
| Tfien, tloufand | Kong, $n$ all | Ching, provence |
| Leou, 12 x | Tfr, equen | Ta, g, cat |
| Pei , bundred | Pe, bundred | Suan, itrte |
| San, ${ }_{\text {chir }}$ | Eul, \} | Nan, men |
| Che, Sthirty | Che, \} tuenty | Niu, ivomen |
| San, three | Pa, eight | Kong, in all |
| Ouan | Ouan | Eul, tieo |
| Eul, two | Tit, feven | Pei, buncircd |
| Tlien, thoufand | Thien, thoufand | Tij, Che, |
| Ou, five Pei , buadred | Se, four | Pa, $c_{2} b_{t}$ |
| Pei, buadred Tfi, ferien | Pe, , bundred Se | Ouan |
| Ti1, /enten $\left[16,33^{2,507 .]}\right.$ | Che, $\}$ forty | Eul, two |
| XII. |  | Then, thoufand |
| XII. | San, | Kienu, nime |
| Chan-si. | $[7,28,4+3 \cdot]$ | Jei, hundred |
| Ching, prowince | XIV. | ${ }^{T}$ Cri, $\}$, feventy |
| Ta, great | Kan-sol. $\dagger$ | Leou, fix |
| Srao, little | Ching, provtace | [2,-82,976. |
| Nan, mon | Ta, great | [2,782,976 |
| Niu, women | Sıdo, little | XVI. |
| Kong, in all | Nan, mer | Quang-tong. |
| 'Pei, bundred | Niu, womet Kong, inall | Ching, propince |
| Tfi, $\}$ Ser | Kong, | - . . . . |
| Che, $\text { Leou, } \sqrt{i} x$ | Or Chen-fu | - • * |
| Ouan | + Kan-fou is a gart | - ${ }^{\text {- }}$ |
| $\mathrm{Pa}_{\text {a }}$ esght | taken from the provanc | Kong, in all |


| Leou, $/ 1 \times$ | Ouda | XIX. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Pel, bunutiod | Tfi, com | Kori-tcheot. |
| $\mathrm{Thig}^{\text {Che }}$ \} feventy | Tiien, thoufand |  |
|  | Sc, four | Th, great |
|  | Y, | Siao, little |
| Tti, feven | Che, foutecn | Nan, men |
| Trien, thoufand | $\mathrm{Sc}, \mathrm{J}$ | Nuu, women |
| Ou, five | [3,947,414.] | Kong, in all |
| Peis bund ${ }^{\text {Pred }}$ | XVIII. | Pe |
| $\left.\begin{array}{l}\text { Kıcou, } \\ \text { Clie, }\end{array}\right\}$ ninety | Yua-nan. | Sc, |
| Tii, feven | Ching, poovince | Che $f$ |
| [6,797,597] | Ta, gecat |  |
| XVII. | Sido, littic | Thien, thoufand |
| Quang-si. | Nan, neen <br> $\mathrm{N}_{14}$, cwomen | Tfi, feven |
| Ching, poovince | Kong, in all | Pel, bundred |
| Ta, gecat | Eul, two | Cul, ${ }^{\text {Che }}$ twenty |
| Saso, litile | Pcte hurdicd | Eul, two |
| Nan, mern | Tii, jcven | -1], [3,402,722.] |
| $\mathrm{N}_{111}$, svomen | Ouan | [3,402,72 |
| Kong, 12 all sin, three | Pa, eqght Thicn, thoufand | KIEN-LONG. |
| $\mathrm{Pel}_{1} /$ /undred | p a, etg ${ }^{\text {bet }}$ | Eul, |
| Kıeou, | Pei, bundred | Chc, $\}$ twenty |
| Cbe, $\}^{\text {nencry }}$ | Eul, two | Leou, $f x$ |
| Se, four | [2,078,802.] | Nien, year |

If we add all thefe quantites, we fhall have, for the fum tutal of the mhabitants of Chind in 1761, which was the twenty-fiaih y ear of the reign of Kien-long, one hindied and ninetr-tight millions, tho hundred and fourten tholfus, hye handicil and tifty-three.

THIS regitter was accompanied with a comparative ftate of the population in the twentyfifth and lwenty-fixth years of the reign of Kienlong, or in 1760 and 1761 . In the former, there were found to be in China 196,837,977 mouths;
moulbs ; in the fecond, $198,214,553$; there was therefore an increafe of $1,376,576$ in the courle of one year only. But, twenty years have elapfed fince the epocha of this numeration; and, as it can be proved by facts, that the population of China, for a long time paft, has been progreffively increafing, may we not thence prefume, that this empire contains at prefent two hundred millions of inhabitants? It will, no doubt, be allowed, that there is no fovereign in the univerfe who commands fo many people united in the fame fociety, and governed by the fame laws.

But it may be afked, whence proceeds this inexhauftible increafe of people in that remote corner of Alia? Is it entirely owing to phyfical coufes, or are thefo only feconded and afifted by the influence of moral and political inftrutions? It would be difficult to give a precife anfwer to this queftion; but we may fay, in general, that the following are the moft apparent caufes of this extraordinary and enormous population. Firft, the ftrict obfervance of filial duty throtighout this valt nation, and the prerogatives of paternity, which make a fon the moft valuable and fafeft property of a father. Secondly, the infamy attached to the memory of thofe who C c 3
die
$390^{\circ}$ General description
die without pofterity. Thirdly, univerfal cuftom, which makes the marriage of children the principal concerr of fathers and mothetrs. Fourthly, the honours beftowed by goverament on thofe widows who do not enter a fecond time into the fate of marriage. Fifthly, frequent adoptions, which prevent families from becoming extincl. Sixthly, the return of wealth to its original ftock by the difinheriting of daughters. Seventhly, the retirement of wives, which renders them more complaifant towards their hufbands, faves them from a number of accidents when big with child, and conftrains them to employ themfelves with the care of their children. Eighthly, the marriage of foldicrs. Ninthly, the fixed flate of taxes, which, being always laid upon lands, never fall but indirectly upon the trader and mechanic. Tenthly, the finall number of failors and travellers. To thefe may be added, the great number of people who refide in China only by intervals; the profound pcace which the empire enjoys; the frugal and laborious manner in which the great live; the little attention that is paid to the vain and ridiculous prejudice of not marrying below one's rank ; the ancient policy of giving diftinction to men, and not to families; by
attaching nobility only to employments and talents, without fuffering it to become herediw tary; and, laftly; decency of public manners, and a total ignorance of fcandalous intrigues and gallantry.

## C H A P. III.

FERTILITY OF CHINA; CAUSES OF THEFRE: QUENT FAMINES EXPERIENCED THERE.

ALL travellers agree in their accounts of the fertility of China, and of the extent and beanty of its plains. Neither inclofures, hedges, nor ditches are feen in them; fcarcely even is there found a fingle tree: fo careful is the Chinefe hufbandman not to lofe the finalleft portion of his land. The plains of the northern provinces produce wheat; thofe of the fouth, rice, becaufe the country is low and coyered with water. The land in feveral provinces yields two crops in a year ; and even in the interval between the harvefts, the people fow feveral kinds of pulfe, and other fmall grain. Ccy But

But how can we reconcile this fertility of the earth with thofe cruel famines and general fcarcities which fo often defolate China ? How happens it, that a fober, active and induftrious people, who inhabit the moft fertile country in the univerfe, governed by princes whofe wifdom and forefight form the moft ftriking features of their character, find themfelves fo often expofed to this deftructive fcourge, while countries in Europe, that are inhabited by people deftitute of the greater part of thefe advantages, fcarce ever feel the horrors of famine?

The folution of this paradox may appear difficult to thofe who have only a fuperficial knowledge of China; but, an attentive conIideration of the local fituation of the different parts of the empire, and of the manner in which its grain is confumed, will be fufficient to explain this fecming impoffibility, and to diffipate every appearance of contradiction.

There are two caufes which concur to produce dreadful famincs in this empire. Firft, when natural events, fuch as drought, hail, inundations, or infects, deftroy the riling crops; in whatever abfolute fcarcity China may be, it is not only impoffible for it to receive any affitance from its neighbours, but it is even
under 'the neceffity of fupplying them. If we take a view of its frontiers, and of the bordering nations, beginning at the provinces of Kocitcheou, Se-tchuen and Chen-fi, as far as the great wall, we fhall find nothing but frightful mountains, the greater part of which have been hitherto peopled with the Miao-tfe, of whom we have fpoken.

To the north of China are the Mogul Tartars, a fubjected people, it is true, but extremely lazy, who fow millet only for their own ufe, and whofe principal food is the flefh of their flocks.

On the north-eaft lies the province of Leaotong, which is extremely fertile, but too far diftant from Pe-king, and from the centre of the empire, to fend its provifions thither. Befides, all carriage is impracticable but during winter; it is in this feafon, that great quantities of game, and fifh preferved, or clothed in ice, according to the Chinele expreffion, are carried from that country to the capital.

Corea does not fupply China with corn. The provinces of Kiang-nan and T'cbe-kiang are bounded on the eaft by the fea of Japan; and, though thefe iflands are only three or four days' failing diftant from the continent, no Chinefe
veffel ever yet attempted to go thither in queft of provifions, whether it be that Japan; already too populous, has nothing to fpare, or that, fince it hás fhut its ports, foreign merchants are expofed there to too many infults.

The fea wafhes the province of Fo-kien on the fouth, oppofite to which lies Formofa. When a fearcity prevails in this illand, China is obliged to fupply it with corn.

The province of Quang-tons is alfo bounded by the fea, and has nothing on the fouth but illands and remote countries. One year, when rice was exceedingly fearce there, the emperor fent for F. Parrenin, a Jefuit miffionary, and afked him, if the city of Macao could not furnifh Canton with rice, until the fupply whirh he had ordered from other provinces fhould arrive; but he feemed much furprifed, when he was informed, that Macao had neither rice, corn, fruits, herbs nor flocks, and that it generally got from China whatever was neceflary for its fubfittence.

After having thus taken a view of all the frontiers of this vaft empire, we perceive, that in times of fcarcity, it can have no refource in its neighbours. What prevents famines in Europe, is freedom of commerce and the facility
with which one country may be fupplied from another: China is deftitute of this advantagePlaced by itfelf in the extremity of Afia, and furrounded by barbarous nations, it muft nourilh itfelf, and procure from ins nwn foil whatever is neceffary for the fubiftence of that immenfe number of inhabitants which is contained in its provinces. This, therefore, at all times, has been the grand object of the care of the public minifters. China has always had granaries and magazines erected in every province, and in moft of the principal cities, for the relief of the people in times of fcarcity. We ftill read orders and edicts of the ancient emperors, which are full of the tendereft expreffions towards their fuffering fubjects. We can, fay they, neither eat, di ink, nor enjoy repofe, until we have relieved the fubluc mifery.

Thefe fatherly expreffions, if taken literally, muft be underftood as refpecting the time when the Chinefe were governed by emperors of their own nation, who confidered their fubjects as their children. At prefent, the theory is fill the fame; orders are iffued in the like manner ; and, in the provinces, they eafily impofe upon thofe who hear them publifhed; but, at court, all thefe fine words, which practice belies, are reduced
reduced to their proper value. The emperor perhaps may ftill have the fame affection for his fubjects; but the officers who are entrufted with his orders, are far from executing them with equal zeal. The dclays and imperiments that keep back fuccour, for the moft part prevent it from arriving feafonably. When the crop has failed in any of the provinces, before the mandarins who have the government of it, can fend their memorials to court; before thefe memorials have paffed through all the hands neceffary to convey them to the emperor ; before this prince has affembled the grandees and different tribunals; and, before commiffarics are appointed and fet out, the fuffering people are reduced to the greateft extremities, and a thoufand unhappy wretches pcrifh before any affiftance arrives.

Another caufe of the fcarcity of grain in China, is the prodigious confumption which is occafioned daily by the compofition of wines, and of a kind of fpirituous liquor called rack. This is one of the grand fources of the evil, both in the northern and fouthern provinces: government is not ignorant of it ; but it employs too weak mcans to prevent it. Proclamations have often been publifhed, forbidding the diftil-
diftillation of rack. The orders of the court are every where pofted up, and announced in all the cities by the governors. Officers, appointed for the purpofe, vifit the ftill-houfes, and deftroy the furnaces if nothing is given them; but if the owner llips into their hand a few pieces of filver, they fhut their eyes, and go fomewhere elfe to act the fame farce. The mandarin fometimes goes round himfelf; the workmen are then feized and thrown into prifon; after which, they are condemned to be whipped, or to carry what is called the cangue*; but they are never punifhed with death. The makers of wine then change their habitations, conceal themfelves for a fhort while, and again begin their operations.

What will appear, no doubt, of little confequence, is, that the fale of rack and of made wines is no where forbidden. Numbers of catts loaded with thefe liquors enter Pe-king daily. The duty is paid at the gate, and they are fold publicly in more than a thoufand fhops that are difperfed throughout the city and fuburbs.

If government meant to execute with effect the laws made againft thefe liquors, ought they

[^4]not to thut up the fhops in which they are retailed ? would they not forbid their being fold, under fevere punifhment, fuch as banifhment, or a heavy fine? But the grandees would then be obliged, in the firft place, to deny themfelves the ufe of thefe luxuries; and it would be too great a facrifice, to give fuch an example to the people.

## C II AP. IV.

$$
\begin{gathered}
\text { MINES OF CHINA; METALS, STONES, } \\
\text { EARTHS, CLAYS, \&C. }
\end{gathered}
$$

THE mountains of China are fo numerous, and fituated under fo various climates, that they muft contain minerals of every fpecics. There are indeed found there in great abundance, mines of gold, filver, iron, copper, tin, lead, mercury, marble, cryftal, cinnabar, lapis lazuli, \&c. Gold and filver would be much more common in this empire, did the Chinefe policy permit the mines which contain thefe metals to be opened ; but the emperors have always feared, that if the people fhould be expofed to the temptation of thefe artificial
artificial riches, they would be induced to forfake the more ufeful labours of agriculture A great part of the'gold which is to be found in China, is colle\{ed in the fand of the rivers and torrents which fall from the mountains that are fituated on the weftern boundaries of the provinces of Se-tchuen and Yun-nan. This laft province is, above all, exccedingly rich in filver-mines. The Lo-los, of whom we have already fpoken, and who inhabit the nearef parts of the kingdoms of Ava and Pegu, muft prouure much gold from their mountains, fince it is a cuftom among them, to inclofe a great quantity of plates of gold in the coffins of thofe people whom they are defirouss of honouring. Their gold does not appear beautiful, becaufe it is not thoroughly purified. The Lo-los are little better acquainted with the art of melting filver, which is ftill blacker, and contains more refufe; but it becomes purer and brighter thant that of any other country, when it has been refined by the Chinefe workmen. The beft and moft valuable gold of China is that which is found in the diftricts of Li-kiang-fou and rang-tchang-fou. As the Chinefe gold is not coined, it. is employed in commerce, and becomes merchandize. The confumption of this gold

## 400 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

 is very fmall; it is never ufed but in gilding, or for llight ornaments. The emperor is the only perfon who poffeffes any quantity of gold plate.Iron, lead and tin mines muft be very common, fince thefe metals are fold at a low rate throughout the whole empire. M. Dortous de Mairan having afked Father Parrenin, if there exifted any monuments which could determine the epocha when iron was firft introduced into China, that celebrated miffionary replied, that the ufe of this metal was very ancient there, and that it appeared to have been known to the firlt leaders of the Chinefe; for mention is made of it in the Cbou-king, under the chapter 1 rukng, where it is related, that iron comes from the territories of Leang-tcheou. It is not, however, faid, that the firft knowledge of iron came from that place; but, as China has undoubtedly begun to be peopled to the weft of Pe-king, it mult have been in Leang-tcheou, that the Chinefe chiefs firft became acquainted with that earth which is proper for the fulion of iron. How could $r^{+} u$ the Great, had he wanted inftruments of iron, have fucceeded in cutting through mountains, or in executing thofe valt canals which he caufed to
be dug to givera free courfe to the waters that had inundated the country? Befides, none of thofe fharp ftones are to be found in China which were formed to fupply the want of iron; at leaft, the prefent literati have never heard any mention made of them.

The copper-mines of the provinces of $\dot{1}$ urs nan and Keei-tcheou have furnifhed, for a great number of years, all the fmall coin that is flruck in the empire. Befides common copper; the Chinefe have another kind, which they call pe-tong, or white copper; it is fo pure and fine, that it approaches near to filver. This copper' is naturally white when taken from the mine ; and when it is broken into grains, it is found ftill whiter in the interior part than on the furface. A number of experiments have been mades at $P e-k i n g$, which fufficiently prove, that this copper does not owe its whitenefs to any mixture. Different kind of works are made of it ; but, to foften it and render it lefs brittle, the workmen are obliged to mix with it a little zinc, or fome metal of the fame kind. Thofe, who are defirous of preferving its filendour and beautiful colour, add to it a fifth part of filver. This copper is found only in the province' of $Y_{u n-n a m . ~ T h e ~ J a p a n e l e ~ b r i n g ~ t o ~ C h i n a ~}^{n}$

Vol. I. D d angther

402 GENERALDESCRIPTION another kind, which is yellow, and fold in ine gots. It has a great refemblance to gold, and is ufed by the Chinefe for making different toys. They pretend that this copper never produces verdigreafe.

The Chinefe fill know another kind of copper, called $t f$-lay-tong, or copper which comes of itfelf. It appears to be nothing elfe but a red copper wathed down from the tops of the mountains, which is afterwards found among the pebbles and fand left by the torrents when they become dry. The Chinefe phyficians attribute to bracclets made of te-liay-tong the property of fortifying the arms againft aitacks of the palfy.

Quarries and coal-mines are fo abunciant in every province of the empire, that there is perhaps no country in the world where they are to common. Coals are found in great plenty in the mountains of the provinces of Cben- $\bar{f}$, Cban- $/ i$ and $P_{e-t c h e l i}$; they are wed by workmen in their furnaces, in all kitchens, and in the ftoves with which the Chinefe warm their apartments during winter. Without this fupply, fire-wood, which is fcarce and very dear, would not be found fufficient for the confumption of the northern provinces.

Lapts lazuli is found is feveral cantons of the province of Yun-nan, which differs in nothing from that imported to Europe. It is alfo to be met with in the province of $\mathrm{Se}-\mathrm{tc}$ chuen, and in a diftrict of the province of Chan- $\left\{\right.$, called Tain $^{a}$ tong-fou, which furnifhes the moft beautiful yu-che of China. This is a kind of white jafper much refembling agate; it is tranfparent when polifhed, and fometimes diverfified with fpots.

The moft beautiful rock cryftal of China is dug from the mountains of Trbang-tcleow-fou, and Tcbang-pou-bien in the province of Fo-kien, fituated in latitude $24^{\circ} 10^{\prime}$. The artifts of thefe two cities are very ingenious in cutting it, and form it into buttons, feals, figutes of animals, and other trinkets.

Fun-nan furnifhes real rubies; but they are exceedingly fmall. There is fold yeally in the capital of this province a great quantity of other precious ftones; but they are faid to be procured from other places, efpecially from the neighbouring kingdoms of Ava and Laos. It is certain, that there is, at the diftance of two hundred fenes or cords from the city of Mohangleng, the capital of Laos, a mine of precious ftones, from which rubies are dug that are fometime as large as a walmat. Emeralds are Dd2 alfo

404 GENERAL DESCRIPTION
allo found there; and we are affured, that the king of Laos has one in his poffeffion which is equal in fize to an orange. A rivulet runs acrofs this mine, and detaches feveral precious ftones, which itt wafhes down with its current. It often happens, that fome of them are picked up which weigh a quarter or third part of an ounce.

Quarries of marble are very common in China, efpecially in the province of Fo-kien. The marble procured from them would not be inferior to that of Europe, were the Chinefe artifts as well acquainted as ours with the art of working it. Small pieces of it are fometimes found among the merchants, which are polifhed in a fuperior manner, fuch as thofe fmall tablets ufed as ornaments in their feftivals, and tramed tien-tfan. They are exceedingly pretty, and variegated with different colours, which, though not lively, reprefent naturally mountains, rivers, trees and animals. Thefe tablets are made of marble procured from the quarries of Ta;! 1 -fou; and the mof beautiful pieces are always chofen for that purpofe.

## SONOROUS STONES.

AMONG the mudical inftruments of China, the oldeft and moft efteemed is compofed of a kind
$a$ kind of fone which has the property of being fonorous. It would be difficult to determine, whether the firft colony that inhabited China carried thither the idea of a mufical inftrument made of ftone, or whether the fonorous ftones that are found there led to this happy invention. An old commentator of the Chou-king fays, the ancients having remarked, that a current of water made fome of the ftones near its banks fend forth a found, they detached fome of them, and, being charmed with the delightful found they emitted, conftructed king or mufical inftruments of them.

The various kinds of fonorous ftones known in China differ confiderably from one another in beauty and in the ftrength and duration of their tone, and what is very furprifing, is, that this difference cannot be difcovered either bythe different degrees of their hardnefs, weight, or finenefs of grain, or by any other qualities which might be fuppofed to determine it. Some ftones are found rernarkably hard, which are very fonorous; and others, exceedingly foft, which have an excellent tone; fome, extremely heavy, emit a very fweet found; and there are others, as light as pumice-ftone, which have alfo an agreeable found.

406 GENERAL DESCRIPTRON
The ftone called $y u$ is the moft celebrated, valuable and beautiful of the fonorous fones known in China. It appears to have exifted there from the remoteft antiquity. If we believe what the ancient Chinefe authors relate of the ftones called $y u$ of their time, if they have not exaggerated their beauty and perfections, we cannot help acknowledging, that thofe found at prefent are far inferior ; but what feems to affure us of the fincerity of thefe ancient writers, is, that this ftone, which appears to have been known under the firlt Trbeou, whofe dynafty began in the year 1122 before Chrift, was very rare under the dynafty of $H a n$, which commenced 206 years before our æra. At that period, thefe ftones were the mont valuable prefents that could be made to the emperors. T'cbing-ty, of that dynafty, who mounted the throne 37 years before Chrift, confidered it as a glorious epocha of his reign, when an ancient king, compofed of fixteen ftones, all of $y u$, had been found on the banks of a river.

Thefe fonorous ftones are found at prefent in channels made by torrents, and in the rivers which flow at the bottoms of the mountains of run-nan, Koei-tcbeou, Cben-f,, -ly and Yoquen. The

## OECHINA.

The ftone $y u$ refembles enternally thofe pebbles which are found in the ftreams and torrents that rufh down through the clefts of the mountains. The large $y u$ are yery rare; the biggeft that the miffionaries ever faw in the imperial palace, were only two feet and a half or three fect in length, and one foot eight or ten inches in breadth; and thefe were confidered as matchlefs pieces. The $y n$ are alfo found in the earth, in valleys near mines, and in the fiffures made by torrents in the fides of the mountains. Thefe differ from others, becaufe their furface is not fo fmooth, and becaufe they are neither of fo firm a texture, nor of fo fine a grain.

Five different properties are remarked in the fonorous $y u$; hardnefs, weight, colour, grain and found.

Beautiful $y$ are fo hard when cut and polifhed like agate and precious ftones, that the beft tempered fteel glides upon them without making any impreflion. The more caroful nature has been in forming them, the more difficult is is to cut them ; but they are capable of receiving a fuperior polifh.

The weight of the $y u$ is proportionable to its hardnefs. An unpolifhed block is preferved in the emperor's palace, which to all appearance Dd 4
one man could lift ; but four are neceffary only to move it : this piece, however, is no more than two feet and a half in length, and half a foot in breadth. It is of an irregular figure, and has a green colour, which is generally that of the commoneft kind of $y u$.

The colour moft efteemed at prefent in thefe ftones, and which is indeed the prettieft, is that of whey; thofe that are next, are bright blue, azure, indigo, citron yellow, orange, logwoodred, pale green, fea green, deep green, cinder gray, \&c. The Chinefe fet more value upon $y u$ which is of one colour only, without veins or fhadcs, unlefs it be variegated in an agreeable manner with five colours.

With regard to the grain of the $y u$, the hardeft and heavieft has always the fineft. But what kind of $y u$ is the moft fonorous? The miffionary who tranfmitted us thefe details confeffes that he cannot anfwer this queftion, becaufe he never found an opportunity of making the ne-: ceffary experiments: the emperor alone is in poffeffion of all the various kinds which would be requifite for this purpofe; it is, befides, doubtful, whether there are different king made of the fame fize and dimenfions, without which they could not be properly compared.

The nieou-yeou-che, or ox fat fone, is the fecond kind of fonorous ftone known in China. It has neither the hardnefs, weight nor fweet tone of the $y u$, and it is more common, and much lefs efteemed : however, it is very rare to find large pieces of it proper for making king. That which is in greateft requeft, has really the colour of the fat of beef, and is of one fhade, without clouds or veins. This ftone is a production of the province of $Y u n-n a n$, and is found in the earth near mines, in valleys, or at the bottoms of the mountains. Its exterior coat is rough, and of a dirty colour, between chefnut and green; below this, there is a fecond, refembling curdled milk; after which comes another, tinged with yellow, that becomes deeper as it approaches the centre. It might be worth while to examine, why the centre of this fone is better formed, more compact, and of a finer texture and deeper colour than its other parts. The $y u$ emits fparks when ftruck with fteel : the nicou-yeou-che does not. This ftone feems more to refemble agate; and it perhaps may be an agate peculiar to China. To be fonorous, the nieou-yeou-che mult bave a beautiful yellow colour, without tranf-
parent

4 GOENERAL DRSCRIPTION parent veins; but it is far from being fo fow norous as the $y u$.

The third kind of fonorous flone, named biang-che, emits fo metallic a found, that one would be almoft induced to take it for a compofition ; but it is certain, that it is of the nawure of fione. Some of them are found black, gray, green, and others variegated with white. The blackeft are the moft fonorous. This fingular fone is brought from the lake of Tchekiang, and appears to be a kind of alabafter, the colour and nature of which have been changed by the water that has penctrated it.

A fourth kind of fonorous ftone refembles marble in its veins, which are gray, black and dirty white on a milk-white ground. 'The greater part of thefe ftones have tranfparent fpots, which fhew that a vitrification has commenced. They appear to be fomething between talc and cryftal. It is remarked, that their tone is often interrupted, and of very fhort duration.

The chemifts and naturalifts of Europe have never yet attempted to difcover, whether fome of our ftones may not have the fame properties as the fonorous ftones of the extremities of Afia. It however appears, that the Romans
were formerly acquainted with a fonorous ftone of the clafs of biang-che. 'Pliny,' fays the abbe du Bos, 'in his Reflections on Poetrt and - $P_{\text {ainting, }}$ when fpeaking of curious fones, ' obferves, that the ftone called calcophonas, or - brazen found, is black; and that, according to ' the etymology of its name, it fends forth a - found much refembling that of brafs when it ' is ftruck. The paffage of Pliny is as follows: ' Calcophonas nigra eft; fed allfa, aris tinnitum ' reddit. Lib. 37. Sect. 56.'

Some fonorous fones fent into France, have at length roufed the curiofity of the chemifs; and they have thought proper to inquire, to what clafs of ftones they may belong. The late duke de Chaulnes applied with particular attention to this refearch. The following is the refult of the experiments which he made on a king in the cabinet of Mr. Bertin:

- The Academy of Sciences, Mr. Romé de 6 Lifle, and feveral other learned mineralogits, ' when afked, if they were acquainted with the ' black ftone of which the Chinefe king were ' made, for anfwer, cited the paflage of Pliny ' mentioned by Boethils de Bott, Linnaus, 6 and in the Dictionary of Bomare, and added, 6 what Mr. Anderfon fays in his Natural Hiftory


## 412 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

c of Iceland, refpecting a blueifh kind of fone *which is very fonorous. As the black ftone ${ }^{6}$ of the Chinefe becomes of a blueith coluur * when filed, it is probably of the fame fpecies. * None of the reft who were confulted had 4 ever feen it,

- The Chinefe ftone has a great refemblance * at firft fight to black marble, ard, like it, is - calcareous; but marble gencrally is not foc norous. It alfo externally refembles touch-- ftone, which is a kind of bafaltes, and the bdfaltes found ncar volcanos; but thefe two ! Atones are vitrifications.
- Its refemblance to black marble induced me - to make fome comparative experiments. It < is not phofphoric; neither is black marble. 6 It has no effect upon a fufpended iron bar; - and confequently contains no iron in its me' tallic ftate. When diffolved in acids, to try 6 whether it contained any particles of that © metal, it produced a ftrong effervefcence,
${ }^{6}$ which feemed to indicate that it was not en6 tirely free from them. As black marble did 6 not prefent the fame phenomenon, the fo-
6 norous fone was examined more attentively \& by a magnifying glafs, when feveral fmall ${ }^{6}$ points,
- points, refembling pyrites, were difcovered in $\checkmark$ it, to which this difference was attributed. - When diffolved in nitrous, marine or vitriolic ' acids, it always prefents the fame phenomena ' as black marble; with vitriolic acid, it makes ' a grayifh magma (which is only a kind of ' calx tinctured with bitumen), and leaves be' hind it a black fubftance that is not foluble in - nitrous or marine acids, and which, as in black - marble, is a real inflammable bitumen.
- Black marble and fonorous fone, when - calcined, become entirely white, and yield ' a very ftrong calx; but it lofes its bitumen ' by the action of fire. Sonorous ftone, how' ever, appears to contain lefs of the phlo' giftic and colvuring matter; for, a precipita' tion of it, by means of fixed alkali, is fome6 what whiter (and has even more of a blueirh ' caft) than that of black marble. When tried - by volatile alkali, it contains no copper. Other ' precipitations of it, by different fubftances, ' exhibit the fame appearances.'

The duke having proceeded thus far in his analyfis, endeavoured to procure fome farther information from the ftone-cutters. They all replied, that bluc-coloured marble was very' fonorous,

4 General degcriptiont. fororous, and that they had feen large blocks of it which emitted a very ftrong found; but the duke having ordered a king to be conftructed of this kind of ftone, it was found, that it did not poffefs that property. By trying the black marble of Flanders, a piece was at length found which emitted an agreeable found: it was cut into a king, that is almoft as fonorous as thofe of China. All thefe obfervations give us reafon to believe, that the fones of which the king are formed, are nothing elfe but a black kind of marble, the conftituent parts of which are the fame as thofe of the marble of Europe, but that fome difference in their organization renders them more or lefs fonorous.

The duke farther obferves, that the Chinefe make king of cryftal, and that one of this kind is to be feen at St. Brice in the cabinet of M. de la Tour, fecretary to the king; that they alfo employ a kind of alabafter, fome pieces of which M. Bertin received from China Shaped like the king, made of black ftone, that were faid to be very fonorous; but they do not appear to have any found at all; laftly, that the fone $y u$, of which the Chinefe conftruct their moft beautiful king, is nothing elfe but a kind of agate-

POTTER'S EARTH, EARTHEN-WARE, PORCELAIN.

THE Chinefe government, more attentive to ufeful and neceffary arts, than to thofe which conduce only to luxury or pleafure, has always given great encouragement to earthen-ware and porcelain; this branch, therefore, eimploys more workmen, and contributes more to the good of commerce, than any other. As China abounds with potter's earth of various kinds and of all colours, fome mixed with gravel, others with the fincif fand, and fome fingularly formed by nature, there is confequently a great difference between the earthen-ware of one province and that which is made in another, both in the thape and fize of the vales. In fome places, vafes are formed which are four or five feet in diameter (and fometimes more), and three feet in depth; in others, velfels are manufactured that are four or five feet in height, and have a proportionable circumference. Thefe vafes, which are called kang, are ufed by the rich as bafons for holding their gold-fifh, flowers, aquatic plants, \&c. by the middiing clafs of people, as refervoirs for their water, or for con-
taining

## 4 G6 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

taining feeds, pulfe and fruits; and by tradef* men and merchants, as tubs or kettles.

As this manufacture is principally carried on in favour of the people, two things have been chie日ly confulted; the firft is, to fupply their wants, by making lamps, fpoons, cups, kitchen and table utenfils of all fhapes and fizes, and even children's toys; the fecond, to proportion the price of thefe neceffaries to their poverty, fo that they may eafily furnifh themfelves with whatever they want. It has alfo been an object of attention, to ornament different kinds of veffels, fuch as tea-pots, cups, faucers, \&c. and to give them elegant thapes. The emperor, to whom works are prefented of all the manufactories of the empire, has introduced the cuftom of painting in enamel, upon different pieces of porcelain, fmall coloured flowers; and, to bring them into common ufe, he employs them in his palace, and they generally form a part of the prefents which he gives to his friends.

People who have travelled in India, are acquainted with thofe vafes made of a kind of potter's earth, which have the property of fweetening and cooling water. Thefe vafes, in this refpect, are preferred to thofe of gold, cryftal,
tryftal, or the fineft porcelain, and are ufed by the poor as well as rich. There are feveral other kinds of earthen-ware which are, in like manner, found to be particularly adapted for certain purpofes; tea, for example, is much better when the water has been warmed in one kind of veffel, and when it is infurfed in another ; rice neither has a delicate tafte, nor can it be boiled properly, but when a coarfe kind of earthen veffel is ufed that has no enamel ; flowers, which languifh in Dutch-ware or porcelain, feem to grow, if we may be allowed the expreffion, when put into other pots of a certain manufacture.

It is certain, that, for culinary and medicinal purpofes, earthen-ware is more ufed in China than in Franre, and that it is found advantageous; that the workmen make more profit by it, and are better acquainted with the art of forming it for every requifite purpofe; for example, the painters pound their colours in a jou-po, or vafe, made of hard earth, with a mallet formed of the fame fubftance; and that the beauty and finenefs of fome kinds of earth have enabled the Chinefe induftry to make feveral pieces of ware which are very valuable, not only on account of their exquifite workmanVol. I. Ee fhip,

418 GENERAL DESCRIPTION
fhip, but alio of their fize, and the fingular beauty of their form. F. Amiot relates, that he faw a ciftern two feet in breadih, and more than three feet and a half in length, the finifhing of which was fo elegant, that, had a piece of marble been done in the fame manner, it would have claimed the higheft admiration.

The fine porcelain of China is fo celebrated, that we cannot here omit giving fonre account of the manner of preparing the pafte of which it is made. This fubftance is produced by the mixture of two forts of earth; one of which is called pe-tun-tfe, and the other, kao-lin; the latter is intermixed with fmall fhining particles; the other is purely white, and very fine to the touch. Thefe firt matcrials are carried to the manufactories in the fhape of bricks. The pe$t u n-t / f$, which is fo fine, is nothing elfe but frayments of rock taken from certain quarries, and reduced to powder. Every kind of ftone is not fit for this purpofe. The colour of that which is good, fay the Chinefe, ought to incline a little towards green. A large iron club is ufed for breaking thefe pieces of rock; they aue afterwards put into mortars ; and, by means of levers headed with ftone bound round with iron, they are reduced to a very fine powder.

## OF CHINA.

419
Thefe levers are put in action either by the labour of men, or by water, in the fame man ${ }_{-}$ ner as the hammers of our paper-mills. The duft afterwards collected, is thrown into a large veffel full of water, which is ftrongly firred with an iron fhovel. When it has been left to fettle for fome time, a kind of cream rifes on the top, about four inches in thicknefs, which is fkimmed off and poured into another veffel filled with water; the water in the firft veffel is ftirred feveral times, and the cream which rifes is fill collected, until nothing remains but the coarfe dregs, which, by their own weight, precipitate to the bottom : thefe dregs are carefully collected, and pounded anew.

With regard to what is taken from the firft veffel, it is fuffered to remain in the fecond until it is formed into a kind of cruft at the bottom. When the water above it feems quite clear, it is poured off, by gently inclining the veffel, that the fediment may not be difturbed; and the pafte is thrown into large moulds proper for drying it. Before it is entirely hard, it is divided into fmall fquare cakes, which are fold by the hundred. The colour of this pafte, and its form, have occafioned it to receive the name of fe-tun-t $\int$.

Ee2
The

## 420 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

The kao-lin which is ufed in the compofition of porcelain, requires lefs labour than the pe-tun-tfe. Nature has a greater thare in the preparation of it. There are large mines of it in the bofoms of certain mountains, the exterior ftrata of which confift of a kind of red earth. Thefe mines are very deep, and the kao-lin is found in fimall lumps, that are formed into bricks, after having gone though the fame procefs as the pe-tun-t/f. Father d'Entrecolles thinks that the earth called terre de Malte, or St. Paul's earth, has much affinity to the kaolin, although thofe fmall fhining particles are not obferved in it which are interfperfed in the latter.

It is from the $k a o-l i n$, that fine porcelain derives all its ftrength ; if we may be allowed the expreffion, it ftands it in ftead of nerves. It is very extraordinary, that a foft earth fhould give ftrength and confiftency to the pe-tun-tfe, which is procured from the hardeft rocks. A rich Chinefe merchant told F. d'Entrecolles, that the Englifh and Dutch had purchafed fome of the pe-tun-tfe, which they tranfported to Europe, with a defign of making porcelain; but, having carried with them none of the kaolin, their attempt proved abortive, as they have fince
fince acknowledged. They wanted, faid this Chinefe, laughing, to form a body the flelb of which flould fupport itfelf without bones.

The Chinefe have difcovered, within thefe few years, a new fubftance proper to be employed in the compofition of porcelain. It is a ftone, or rather fpecies of chall, called boa-che, from which the phyficians prepare a kind of draught that is faid to be deterlive, aperient and cooling. The manufacturers of porcelain have thought proper to employ this fone inftead of kao-lin. It is called boa becaufc it is glutinous, and has a great refemblance to foap. Porcelain made with $h o a-c h e$ is very rare, and much dearer than any other. It has an exceeding fine grain, and, with regard to the painting, if it be compared with that of the common porcelain, it appears to furpafs it as much as vellimm does paper. This porcelain is, befides, fo light, that it furprifes thofe who are accuftomed to handle other kinds; it is alfo much morc brittle; and it is very difficult to hit upon the proper degree of tempering it.

Hoa-che is feldom ufed in forming the body of the work ; the artift is contented fometimes with making it into a very fine fize, in which the veffel is plunged when dry, in order that Ee3
ik
it may receive a coat before it is painted and varnifhed : by thefe means, it acquires a fuperior degree of beauty.

When boa-che is taken from the mine, it is wafhed in rain or river water, to feparate it from a kind of yellow earth which adheres to it. It is then pounded, put into a tub filled with water, to diffolve it, and afterwards formed into cakes like kao-lin. We are affured, that boa-che, when prepared in this manner, without the mixture of any other earth, is alone fufficient to make porcelain. It ferves inftead of kao-lin; but it is much dearer, Kao-lm cofts only tenpence fterling; the price of boa-cbe is half-acrown : this difference therefore greatly enhances the value of porcelain made with the latter.

## C H A P. V.

## FRUITS, LEGUMINOUS PLANTS, AND POT HERBS OF CHINA.

CHINA produces the greater part of the
fruits which we have in Europe, and feveral other kinds, that are peculiar to the country. Apples, pears, prunes, apricots, peaches, quinces,
quinces, figs, grapes, pomegranates, oranges, walnuts and cheftnuts, are found every where in abundance; but the Chinefe have no good fpecies of cherries. In general, excepting grapes and pomegranates, the fruits which they have in common with us, are much inferior to thofe of Europe. The Chinefe have feveral kinds of olives, all different from ours; but they do not extract oil from them, whether it be, that this fruit in China is not proper for that purpofe, or that they are ignorant of the art of making it. Their manner of gathering their olives is very convenient : they bore a hole in the trunk of the tree, which they fop up, after having put fome falt into it; and, at the end of a few dayc, the fruit drops of itfelf.

Oranges were firl brought us from China ; and we are indebted to the Portugucfe for them. We are affured, that the tree from which all thofe of Europe have fprung, is ftill preferved at Lifbon, in the houfe of the count de St. Laurence. The Chinefe have a great number of kinds. The moft efteemed, which on account of their rarity are fent to India, are very fmall ; their fkin is very fine, fmooth and foft, and of a reddifh-yellow colour. A larger kind is eaten at Canton, which are yellow,

$$
\mathrm{E} \mathrm{e}_{4} \quad \text { have }
$$

have an agreeable tafte, and are very wholefome. The Chinefe generally give them to their fick; but they always ufe the precaution of foftening them a little at the fire, or under hot athes, and of mixing a good deal of fugar with them. They are firmer than the oranges of Provence; their fkin does not peel off eafily from the pulp; and the pulp is not feparated into fmall divifions, as in thofe of Europe.

Lemons and citrons are very common in China. But the Chinefe pay particular attention to the culture of a kind of lemon-tree, the fruit of which are of the fize of a walnut; they are round, green and four, and are faid to be excellent in ragouts. Thefe trees are often planted in boxcs, to ornament courte, halls and apartments.

The Chinefe have a very fmall fpecies of melons, which are yellow within, and exceedingly fweet, and which are eaten with the fkin, as we fomctimes eat apples in Europe. They have alfo another kind, fill more efteemed, which are brought from a part of Tartary, called $H a-m i$. Thefe melons, as we have already faid, may be kept frefh for five or fix months. Great care is taken every year to make
make a proper provifion of them for the emperor's table.

The $t f-t f e$, which the Pcrtuguefe call figs, are a fpecies of fruit peculiar to China, that grow in almoft all the provinces. There are different kinds of them. Thofe of the fouthern parts of the empire are remarkably fweet ; their feeds are black and flat, and the pulp is dimy and extremely juicy. In $C b a n-f \hat{f}$ and $C b e n-f$, the $t f e-1 / f e$ are larger, firmer and richer, and much fitter for being kept. The tree which produces this fruit is very beautiful ; it is as tall and buhy as our middling-fized walnuttree ; its leaves are of a bright green; but they change their colour in autumn, and appear of a beautiful red. The fruit are of the fize of a common apple; in proportion as they ripen, they affume an orangc-colour; and when they are dried, they are as fweet and mealy as figs.

Two kinds of fruit with which we are not acquainted, are found in the provinces of $\mathrm{Fo}_{0}$ kien, 2uang-tong and $_{2}^{2}$ uang-fi. The firft, called $l i$ - $t c h i$, is of the fize of a date ; its ftone, which is long and very hard, is covered with a foft, juicy pulp, that has an exquifite tafte. This pulp is inclofed with a rough, thin rind, flhaped at one end like an egg. We are affured, that

## 426 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

that thes rruit is delicious; but it is dangerous when eat to excefs; for it is fo bot, that it occafions an eruption over the whole body. The Chinefe fuffer it to dry in the rind, until it becomes black and fhrivelled, like our prunes. By thefe means, it is preferved all the year ; and they generally ufe it in tea, to which it communicates a certain fournefs, which they prefer to the fweetnefs of fugar. The following obfervation is made for thofe who wifh to eat this fruit in perfection.-If it is entirely ripe, and left a day longer on the tree, it changes its colour; if it be fuffered to remain a fecond, it may be eafily perceived by its tafte, that it has begun to change; but if it continues a third, the alteration becomes very fenfible. In order that this fruit may lofe none of its flavour or fmell, it muft be eat in the provinces where it grows. Had we the art of tranfporting it as frefh to Europe as it is brought when dried, we could judge but very imperfectly of its goodnefs. The li-tchi which are carried to Pe-king for the ufe of the emperor, inclofed in tin veffels, filled with fpirits mixed with honey and other ingredients, preferve, indeed, an appearance of frefhnefs; but they lofe much of their favour. That this prince might tafte them in
the higheft perfection, the trees themfelves have been fometimes tranfported to the capital in boxes; and they have been fo well managed, that, when they arrived there, the fruit was near its maturity.

The other kind of fruit peculiar to the fouthern provinces, is the long-yen, or dragon's eye; it is of a round figure, has a yellowifh fkin , and its pulp is white, tart and juicy. It is faid, that, if this fruit is not fo agrecable to the tafte as the $l i-t c h i$, it is, however, more wholcfome, and may be eat with greater fafety.

The Chinefe diftinguifh three kinds of apri-cot-trees; the apricot-tree with double flowers; the apricot-tree that produces fruit, and the wild apricot-tree. The apricot-tree with double flowers, which Mr. Duhamel fays he never faw, is cultivated in gardens; the Chincfe divide this tree into four principal claffes; which are, the millefolia, pale yellow, milk white, and the common, the buds of which at firft appear red; but the flowers whiten as they blow. There are dwarf apricot-trees with double fowers, which are placed for ornament in apartments, where they flower during winter. The reft are planted on littie mounts in gardens, and have a very beautiful effet in fpring.

The

The apricot-tree which bears fruit, almoft refembles that of France. The Chinefe gardeners diftinguifh it into feveral claffes, which produce the following different kinds of fruit : the ken-ling, which is round, and has a yellow pulp; it ripens fooneft, and is very well tafted; the choui-bing, which is exceedingly juicy, and has an exquifite flavour; the pe-bing, the pulp of which is white, and has but an indifferent tafte; the li-hing, that always preferves a grcenifh tint, and a fourifh tafte; the kien-kowan-kinen, which has a flelh-colour, is exceedingly juicy, and a little flatted; the motu-ling, which is flat and greenifh, and which always retains a fourifh tafte; and lafly, the pa-tan, that originally came from beyond the defert of Cba-mo. This apricot is fmall, contains little pulp, and is only efteemed on account of its kerael, which is very large, and of a fweet and agreeable tafte.

The wild apricot-tree, which is probably to be found in France, would, no doubt, engage the atténtion of our gardeners more, were its utility better known. The Chinefe difinguifh this tree into three kinds; two of which have a great refemblance. Their kernels yield a very good oil, which may be fubftituted for that
ufed at table. It is, at leaft, much fuperior to the oil produced from walnuts, which is burnt in lamps. The Chinefe peafants warm their ftoves with what remains of the ftones, and collect the cinders, which they ufe for manuring their land.

The wild apricot-tree requires no culture ; it will grow in the worf :oil, and flowers fo late, as not to be in any danger from the froft. It is even admitted into the emperor's garden, where it is planted in the poore? ground, and in the moft unfavourable fituation for receiving the benefit of the fun's rays. The barten mountains which lie to the weft of Pe-king, are covered with thefe trees; and, what perhaps will be hardly believed, is, that the crops produced by them, and the oil extracted from their kernels, render the peafants who inhabit thefe mountains, as rich as thofe who live in the low lands. Apricots in China, as in Europe, are generally the earlieft fruit of fummer. The Chinefe, as we do, preferve them both dry and liquid; but they always wait until the fruit is quite ripe. Befides this, they prefs out the juice, boil and clarify it, and form it into a kind or lozenges, that may be kept as long as they choofe, and which, when diffolved in water, make

430 GENERAL DESCRIPTION
make a cooling and refreihing beverage. They alfo dry, for the fame purpofe, the fmall moun-tain-apricots; they detach the pulp from the ftone, and dip them feveral times in the juice of other apricots, that are very ripe, or even in that of cherries. Thefe apricots, when dried in the fun, are kept until next fpring, when they are eaten, after having been boiled in water, with honey and fugar. When boiled until they are entirely diffolved in a large quantity of water, with which honey and vinegar are afterwards mixed, they affiord an excelient and refrefhing drink to the common peop!e. As this drink is very wholefome, thofe even in better circumftances ufe it, after having added to it a little fine fugar and fome orange-peel.

China produces abundance of grapes; it is not, therefore, from a want of this fruit, that the Chincfe make no ufe of wine. Thofe who believe that the vine was not known in this empire until very late, and that it was brought hither from the weft, labour under a great miftake. All the literati affure us, that the vine has been known and cultivated in China from the remoteft antiquity. What is faid in the $T^{\prime} c b e o u-l y$, refpecting the duty of the mandarins entrufted with the care of the emperor's gardens,
dens, cannot be underftood of any thing elfe but of the vine ; but the $\mathcal{T}$ cheou-ly is confidered as the work of the celebrated T'cheou-kong, brother of Vou-vang, who mounted the throne in the year 1122 before Chrift. However this may be, it is certain, that there were vines in Cban- $\hat{i}$ and Cben- $/ \hat{i}$ feveral centuries before the Chriftian $x$ ra ; and that a fufficiency of them was cultivated to make abundance of wine. See-ma-ffien remarks, that a private individual had made ten thoufand meafures. There was a time when the inhabitants of the provinces of Pe-tche-ly, Cban-tong, Ho-nan and of Hou-quang, applied themfelves equally to the culture of vines. The wine which they made had the property of keeping feveral years, when put into pitchers and buried in the earth; and, - This liquor,' fays the hiftorian, ' was become ' fo common, that it caufed great diforders.' The fongs which remain of all the dynafties fince that of 1 ven to Han, give us reafon to believe, that the Chinefe have always been fond of wine made from grapes. The emperor Ouen$t i$, of the dynafty of Ouei, celebrates it*with a lyric enthufiafm worthy of Horace or Anacreon; and we find in the large Chinefe Herbal, book 133, that wine made from grapes was the wine

## 432 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

wine of honour, which feveral cities prefented to their governors and viceroys, and even to the emperor. In 1373 , the emperor Tai-tfou accepted fome of it, for the laft time, from Tai-yuen, a city of Chen-f $f$, and forbade any more to be prefented. I drink little wine, faid the prince, and I am unrviling, that wobat I do drink bould occafion any burden to my people.

It appears, that the vine has experienced many revolutions in China. It has never been excepted, when orders have been iffued for rooting up all thofe trees that encumbered the fields deftined for agriculture. The extirpation of the vine has been even carried fo far in moft of the provinces, under certain reigns, that the remembrance of it has been entirely forgotten. When it was afterwards allowed to be planted, it would appear, from the manner in which fome hiftorians exprefs themfelves, that grapes and the vine began then to be known for the firft time. This probably has given rife to the opinion, that the vine has not been long introduced into China. It is however certain, without feeaking of remote ages, that the vine and grapes are exprefsly mentioned in the Chinefe annals, under the reign of the emperor Vou-ly, who came to the throne in the year 140 before
the Chriftian rra; and that, fince his time, the ufe of wine may be traced from dynafty to dynafty, and, as we may fay, from reign to reign, even to the fifteenth century. With regard to the prefent ftate of the culture of vines in China, we know for certain, that the emperors Kang-bi, Yong-tching and Kien-long, now on the throne, caufed a number of new plants to be brought from foreign countries; that the three provinces of Ho-nan, Cbang-tong and Cban-f, have repaired their former loffes; that the large cities of T'ai-yuen and Ping'yang in Cban-f $f$, are famous throughout the whole empire, on account of the great quantity of dried grapes that are procured from their environs, both for the table and medicinal purpofes; and that the province of Pe-tcbeli, at all times fruitful in vines, produces fo many at piefent, that there are fourteen of its diftricts celebrated for their raifins, which are preferved long, and fold in Pe-king at a very moderate price. The raifins moft in requeft in China, are thofe which, as we have faid, come from the country of Ha-mi.

The Chinefe furpars us in the art of managing kitchen-gardens. As roots and greens are the principal nourimment of the people, they

Vol. I. Ff
fpare

434 GENERAL DEGCRPPTION fpare neither care nor labour to procure themt gaod. Befides thofe kinds common in Europe, they have a great number of others, which are tanknown to us. One of the moft fingular is a fpecies of onions, which are not produced from feed, as ourrs. Towards the clofe of the feafon, fome fmall filaments are feen fpringing from the ends of the leaves, in the middle of which a white onion is formed, like thofe that grow in the earth. This fimall onion by degrecs fhoots forth leaves fimilar to thofe which fupport it ; and thefe new leaves, in their turn, bear another onion on their points, but in fuchr manner, that the leaves and the onion become fmaller as they are farther diftant from the earth. One would almoft believe this plant to be the work of art, fo much proportion and regularity is there in the different flories into which it is divided.

Rue, forrel, cablage-plants and other greens, when tranfported from India to China, either die or degenerate before the end of two or three years. The Chinefe, however, have real cabbages; but they ncver grow into a head. They have alfo had parfley for a long time; But it has neither the tafte nor beauty of that of Europe.

Among the pot-herbs which we bave not, and for which the Chinefe are to be envied, is that called pe-tfai. This is an excellent plant, and much ufed. Its leaves give it fome refemblance to the Roman beet ; but it differs frona it in its flower, feed, tafte and fize. The beft $p e-t \int a i$ grows in the northern provinces, where the inhabitants leave it to be foftened by the firft koar-frofts. The quantity of it fown and confumed is almoft incredible. During the months of October and November, the nine bridges of Pe-king are almoft blocked up by waggons loaded with this plant, which continue paffing from morning till night. The Chinefe make provifion of pe-ffai for winter; they falt or pickle it, and mix it with their rice, which it renders much better tafted.

## THE PI-TSI, OR WATER-CHISTNOT.

SOME authors have confidently afferted in Europe, that the Chinefe fuffer part of their lands to lie wafte. Thefe people undoubtedly have been ignorant, that they cultivate even the bottom of their waters, and that the beds of their lakes, ponds and rivulets, produce crops that to us are unknown. Their active induftry has found out refources in a great number of Ff2 aquatic

436 GENERAL DESCRIPTION aquatic plants, feveral of which, as the $p_{i-1 / 2}$ and the lien-hoa, are the greateft delicacies of a Chinefe table. Government, in order to fet an example before the people, has caufed this plant to be cultivated in all the lakes, marhes and wafte grounds covered with water, which belong to the ftate. The emperor himfelf has ordered all the canals which ornament his gardens, to be planted with it; and the greater part of the ditches round his palace are full of it. The flowers and verdure of this ufeful plant allo cover almoft entirely thofe two immenfe flicets of water that are found in the centre of Pe-king, and which are only feparated by a bridge, where every body may pafs, and from which there is an excellent view of the magnificent gardens belonging to the imperial palace. The $p_{i-1}$ if, or real water-chefthut, grows only in the fouthern provinces of China; it foon dies at Pe-king; its leaves are as long as thofe of the bulrufh, but hollow, and formed into a pipe like the top of an onion.

What is moft extraordinary in this plant, is, that its fruit is found in a cover formed by its root, and in which it is inclofed, as a cheftnut in its rough hufk. When this hufk is brokerr, the fruit may be extracted, without hurtirg
the
the plant. This water-cheftnut is exceedingly wholefume, and has a moft delicate tafte. It is given to fick people to chew, as it is very cooling for the mouth.

We have, yet neglect, in fome provitices of France, a kind of water-cheftnut, which the ancients called tribulus. The miffionaries think that this plant is the fame as that known to the Chinefe by the name of lin-kio, from which they derive much benefit. Were this certain, the culture of it might be extended, as it would prove a new refource in times of fcarcity. This other kind of water-cheftnut, the lin-kio, is a cooling and agreeable fruit in fummer. When green, it is fold in the markets at Pe-king, as our filberts in Europe. It is fometimes dried and reduced to powder, and the Chinefe make excellent foup of it, cfpecially when a little wheaten flour is added to it; a third part of it may be mixed alfo with the flour of which bread is made. When baked in an oven, or preferved with fugar or honey, it becomes wholefome and agreeable food; it is likewife very proper for feeding geefe, ducks, and other kinds of poultry.

The culture of the lin-kio requires no care; for it propagates of itfelf in all thofe places where it grows. When it is neceffary to fow it

$$
\mathrm{Ff}_{3} \quad \text { in }
$$

in a pond or rivulet, the feed is thrown inta the fhalloweft part of the water, about the end of autumn; but that place is always chofen where the water is clear and expofed to the fouth. The more heat the lin-kio receives, the more wholefome, favoury and fruitful it is.
C H A P. VI.

TREES, SFRUBS AND PLANTS OF CHINA,

CHIN $A$, in its vaft extent, contains almoft cvery fpecies of trees that are kncwn to us; but we flall only defcribe thofe peruliar to the country, or, at leaft, fuch as are not to be found in our weftern climates.

## THE TALLOW-TREE.

AMONG thefe extraordinary trees,we muft diftinguifh that which produces tallow. This tree is of the fize of our cherry-tree; its branches are crooked; its leaves, which are Ghaped like a heart, are of a bright red colcur; it has a finooth bark, a fhort trunk, and its top is round and bufhy. The fruit is contained in a hufk divided into three fpherical fegments, which
ofen when it is ripe, and difcover three white grains, of the fize of a fmall walnut. It is the pulp with which thefe flones are covered, that has all the propertics of tallow; its colour, fmell and confiftence are exactly the faine. The Chinefe melt it, and make candles of it, mixing only a little linfeed-oil with it, to render it fofter and fweeter. Had they the art of purifying it as we purify tallow in Europe, their candles would not be inferior to ours; but, as they neglect to take this precaution, they have a more difagreeable fmell, produce a thicker fmoke, and afford a much fainter light.
WAX-TREE.

THE Chinefe procure alfo from certain trees a kind of wax which is almoft equal in quality to that made by bees. They call it pe-la, or white-wax, becaufe it is fo by nature. This wax is depofited by fmall infects, on two kinds of trees; for no others afford them proper nourifhment. The firft is fhort and bufhy, and grows in a dry, fandy foil. The Chinefe call it kan-la-cbu, or the dry tree that bears wax. The other fpecies is much larger and prettier, and thrives only in moift places; it is named choui-la-cbu, or the aquatic tree that produces wax.

## $44^{\circ}$ GENERAL DESCRIPTION

The kar-la-cbu, being of a thrubby nature; cafily propagates; walls may be covered with it to the height of ten or twelve feet, or hedges may be formed of it in the fields; it equally endures heat and cold, and thrives, without the leaft culture, in the barreneft foil.

The fmall infects that make the pe-la, do not naturally frequent thefe trees; they muft be placed upon them : but this operation is not difficult; and, after a tree has been once ftocked, it always retains them. 'Towards the beginning of winter, fmall tumours are perceived upon the $k a n-l a-c b u$ that have already produced wax, which continually increafe, until they become of the fize of a fmall walnut: thefe are fo many nefts filled with the eggs of thofe little infects, which in the country are called pe-latchong, or la-tchong. When the warmth of fpring makes the tree fhoot forth its bloffom, it alfo gives life to the infects that cover it. Then is the proper time to depofit nefts on thofe trees which have none. The Chinefe make fimall packets or bundles of ftraw, on each of which they put feven or eight nefts; they afterwards tie thefe packets to the branches, taking care to piace the neits immediately on the bark. If the ihrub is five feet in height, it is capable of fup-

## GFCHINA:

44:
porting one or two packets on each of its boughs; and thus of its branches, in proportion to their fize and vigour. After thefe infects are hatched, they run upon the branches, difperfe themfelves over the leaves, and perforate the bark, under which they retire ; but they always come forth at the proper feafon for making their wax.

It is about the middle of June, that this wax begins to appear upon the kan-la-cbu. At firft, a few filaments, like thofe of fine foft wool, are perceived rifing from the bark, around the body of the infect ; but, by degrees, thefe filaments form a kind of down, which continually becomes thicker, and increales more and more in fize during the heats of fummer. This cruft entirely covers the infect, and defends it, not only from the heat, but alfo from the rain and ants. The Chinefe affure us, that, if the wax were left too long on the tree, the infects would not make their nefts. Care muft be taken to gather it before the firft hoar frofts in September.

This wax is white and bright, and preferves its tranfparency to the depth of an inch. It is carried to court, and referved for the ufe of the moperor, princes and chief mandarins. If an

## 442 GENERA童 DESCRIPTION

 ounce of it be added to a pound of oil, this mixture acquires a confiftency, and forms a wax Jittle inferior to that made by bees. The phyficians employ it in curing feveral difeafes; when applied to wounds, it makes the flefh heal in a very fhort time. We are alfo affured, that many of the Chinefe, when they are about to fpeak in public, or when any occafion is likely to occur on which it may be neceflary to have affurance and refolution, eat an ounce of this wax, to prevent fwoonings or palpitations of the heart.
## THE TSI-CHH, OR VARNISH-TREE.

AN opinion long prevailed in Eurnpe, that the celebrated varnifh of the Chinefe was only a particular compofition, which thefe people had the art of making. It is now known, that they are indebted to nature and their climate only, for this preciaus liquor, which gives fo much luftre and beauty to many of their manufactures. The Chinefe varnifh is indeed nothing elfe than a reddifh gum which diftils from certain trees called $t f$-chu. Thefe trees grow in the provinces of Kiang- $f$ and Se-tchuen; but thofe which are found in the territories of

Kan-tcheou,

Kan-tcheou, one of the mof foutherly cities of Klang- $\mathcal{F}$, produce the moft valuable varnilh.

We are affured, that the $t f$-cbuu, the bark and leaves of which have great refemblance to thofe of the afh, bears neither fruit nor flowers. It Kldom exceeds fifteen feet in height; and the circumference of its trunk, when largeft, is about two feet, or two feet and a half. The Chinefe take the following method of propagating this tree.-In fpring, they choofe a vigorous fhoot, about a foot in length, which proceeds inmediately from the trunk; and coat over the lower part, by which it adheres to the tree, with a kind of yellow earth, at leaft three inches in thicknefs. This coat is carefully cowered with a mat, to defend it from rain and the injuries of the air. Towards the autumnal equinox, they detach a little of the earth, to obferve in what condition the fmall roots are, which begin to fpring forth from the fhoot. If they find that the filaments which compore them, are of a reddifh colour, they judge it is time to make an amputation; but the $\dot{y}$ defer it ${ }_{\text {a }}$ if the roots are white, hecaufe this colour fhews that they are yet too tendict. They then clofe up the coat again, and wait till the fpring following. When the thoot is feparated from the

## 444 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

the trunk of the tree, it is put into the earth; but, in whatever feafon it is planted, whether in fpring or autumn, great care muft be taken, to put plenty of cinders into the hole prepared for it; without this precaution, the ants would deftroy the yet tender roots, or, at leaft, deprive them of all their moifture, and caufe them to decay.

The Chinefe do not procure varnifh from the $t /$ - $-c b u$ until its trunk is nearly five inches in diameter, which fize it feldorm attains to before feven or eight years. Varnifh extracted from a tree fmaller, or of lefs age, would not have the fame body and fplendour. This liquor diftils only in the night time, and during the fummer feafon; it does not flow in winter; and the varnifh produced by the tree in fpring or autumn, is always mixed with a great deal of water.

To caufe the gum to flow, they make feveral rows of incifions round the trunk, the number of which is proportioned to the vigour of the tree. The firft row is feven inches from the earth, and the reft are at the fame diffance one from the other, and continue to the top of the trunk, and even fometimes on the boughs which are of a fufficient ftrength and fize. The

Chinefe

Chinefe ufe a crooked iron for making thefe incifions, which muft run a little obliquely, and be equal in depth to the thicknefs of the bark; they make them with one hand, and with the othet hold a fhell, the edges of which they infert into the opening, where it remains without any fupport. Thefe incifions are made towards evening; and next morning, they collect the varnifh that has fallen into the fhells; the following evening, they are again inferted; and this operation is continued until the end of fummer. A thouland trees yield almoft, in one night, twenty pounds of varnifh.

This varuifh, for the moft part, is not extracted by the proprietors of thofe trees, but by merchants, who purchafe them for the feafon, at the rate of three-pence per foot. Thefe merchants afterwards hire workmen, to whom they give an ounce of filver per month, both for their labour and maintenance. One workman is fufficient for fifty feet of timber.

While the varnifh diftils, it exhales a mafignant vapour, the bad effects of which can only be prevented by prefervatives and great precaution. The merchant who employs thefe workmen, is obliged to keep by him a large vale filled with rape-oil, in which a certain quantity.
$44^{6}$ ceneral description quantity of thofe flefry filaments have been boiled that are found in hog's lamd, and which do not-melt. When the workmen are going to fix the fhetls to the trees, they carry fome of this cill along with them, and rub their face and hands with it, which they do with greater care when they collect in the moming the varnifh that has diftilled during night. After eating, they wahh their whole bodies with warm water in which the bark of the cheftnut-tree, firwood, cryftallized faltpetre, and fome other drugs, have been boiled. When they are at work near the trees, they put upon their heads a fmall cloth bag in which there are two holes, and cover the fore-part of their bodies with a kind of apron made of doe-fkin, which is fufpended from their necks with ftrings, and tied round them with a girdle. They alfo wear boots, and have coverings on their arms, made of the fame kind of flin. The labourer who Should attempt to colted varnilh without uing this precaution, would toon be punifhed for his rafhnefs; and the moft dreadful effects would enfue. The diforder fhews itfelf by tetters, which become of a bright rect colour, and fpread in a tery fhort time; the body afterwards fwells, and thefin in burtis and appears covered with an uni-

## OFCHDMA

verfal leprofy. The unhappy wretch could noe long endure the excruciating pains which the feels, did he not find a fpeedy remedy in thofe prefervatives which are ufed againft the mam lignant and noxious exhalations of the varnilh.

When the labourers go to collect this gum, they carry, fufpended from their girdles, a kind of veffel, made of leather; with one hand they detach the chells, and fcrape them with a fmall iron inftrument, which they hold in the other, in order that they may lofe none of the varnifh. It is then carried to the merchant's houfe, where it is purified, by ftraining it through a cloth; and the dregs are fold to the druggifts, who employ them for certain purpofes in medicine.

The feafon of collecting varnifh being ended, the merchant puts it into finall caiks clofely ftopped. A pound of it newly made, colts him about one fhilling and eight-pence fterling; but he gains cent. per cent. upon it, and fomen times more, according to the diftance of the place to which he tranfports it.

Befides the luftre and beauty that varnifh gives to many of the Chinefe manufactures, is has alfo the property of preferving the wood upon which it is laid, efpecially if no other
matter be mised with it. It prevents it frond being hurt, either by dampnefs or worms.

Every workman has a particular art and method of ufing varnifh. This work requires not only much fkill and dexterity, but alfo great attention, to obferve the proper degree of fluidity which the gum ought to have, as it muft be neither too thick nor too liquid when it is laid on. Patience, above all, is neceffary in thofe who wifh to fucceed. To be properly varnifhed, a work muft be done at leifure; and a whole fummer is fcarcely fufficient to bring it to perfection. It is therefore rare to fee any of thofe cabinets which are imported to us from Canton, fo beautiful and durable as thofe manufactured in Japan, Tong-king, and Nang-king, the capital of the province of Kiarignan : not that the artifts do not employ the fame varnifl ; but, as they work for Europeans, who are more eafily pleafed, they do not take the troubie of giving the pieces which come from their hands, all the polifh they are capable of receiving.

There are two methods of laying on varnifh; the fimpleft, is when it is immediately laid on the wood. The work is firft polifhed, and then daubed over with a kind of oil, which the Chi-
nefe call tong-ycou. When this oil is dry, it receives two or three coats of varnifh, which remain fo tranfparent, that all the fhades and veins of the wood may be feen through them. If the artift is defirous of entirely concealing the fubftance on which they are laid, nothing is neceffary but to add a few more coats : thefe give the work a fhining furface, the fmooth~ nefs of which equals that of the molt beautiful ice. When the work is $d_{1} y$, various figures are painted upon it, in gold and filver, fuch as flowers, birds, trees, temples, dragons, \&c. A new coat of varnifh is then fometimes laid over thefe figures, which preferves them, and adds much to their fplendour.

The fecond method of ufing varnifh requires more preparation. The Chinefe workmen fix to the wood, by means of glue, a kind of pafteboard, compofed of paper, hemp, lime and other ingredients, well beaten, that the varnifh may incorporate with them. Of this they make a ground perfectly fmooth and folid, over which the varnifh is laid in thin coats, that are left to dry one after the other.

It often happens, that the luftre of varnifhed tables, and other pieces of furniture, is infenfibly deftroyed by tea and warm liquors. "The feVol. I. Ggg 'cret

## 450 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

' cret of reftoring to varnifh its fhining black ' colour,' fays a Chinefe author, ' is to expofe ' it, for one night, to a white hoar froft, or to ' cover it fome time with fnow.'

TIE-LY-MOU, OR IRON-WOOD.
THIS tree rifes to the height of our large oaks; but it differs from them both in the fize of its trunk and in the fhape of its leaves. Its wood is exccedingly hard, and fo heavy, that it finks in water. The anchors of the Chinefe fhips of war are made of it.

THE NAN-MOU.
TRAVELLERS defcribe this tree as the Chinefe cedar: however, its leaves are notifhaped like thofe of the cedar of Lebanon. This tree is one of the talleft in China; its branches, which thoot up vertically, grow from the trunk, only at a certain height, and terminate in a bulh, or tufted top. The Chinefe confider its wood as incorruptible.-When we are defirous, fay they, of erecting an edifice to laft for ever, we muft employ only the nan-mou. Great ufe, therefore, is made of this wood in building the emperor's palaces, where all the pillars, beams and doors, are made of it.

THE TSE-TAN, OR ROSE-WOOD.
'THIS tree furnifhes the molt beautiful and valuable wood that is ufed by the Chinefe artifts. It is of a black colour inclining towards red, ftriped and variegated with delicate veins, which have the appearance of painting. It is employed for making tables, chairs, and other pieces of furniture, which are in greater requeft, and coft much dearer, than thofe that are varnifhed.

## THE TCHANG, OR CAMPIIRE-TREE.

THE valuable tree from which camphire is procured, is alfo a production of China. We are affured, that fome of them are found which are above an hundred cubits in height, and fo thick, that twenty perfons cannot enclofe them. The trunks of thefe trees, when old, emit fparks of fire ; but their flame is fo fubtle, that there is no danger to be apprchended from it ; it does not even injure the hair of thofe who are near it. Common camphire colts only a penny the ounce at Pe-king; but it is inferior to that of Borneo, in the judginent even of the Chinefe.

The manner in which fome authors have fpoken of Camphire, gives us reafon to conGg 2
clude,

452 GENERAL DESCRIPTION clude, that they have been entirely ignorant of the procefs emploved to obtain this falutary gum. The camphire does not drop to the earth, like the gums of certain refinous trees, which are preferved by difcharging that part of their fubflance which is too oily; nsither does it diftil from the top to the bottom of the tree, through an incifion made in it. The Chinefe would practife this method, could it be employed with fuccefs; for it is very common in China, to make fuch kind of incifions in refinous trees. The method ufed by the Chinefe for obtaining camphire, is as follows.-They $t$,'te fome branches frefh from the tchang, chop them very fmall, and lay them to fteep in fring water for three days and threc nights. After they have been foaked in this manner, they are put into a kettle, where they are boiled for a certain time, during which they keep contimually ftirring them with a ftick made of willow. When they perceive that the fap of thefe finall chips adheres fufficiently to the lick, in the form of white froft, they ftrain the whole, taking care to throw away the dregs and refufe. This juice is afterwards poured gently into a new carthen bafon well varnifhed, in which it is fuffered to remain one night. Next

Nest morning, it is found coagulated, and formed into a folid mafs. To purify this firft preparation, they procure fome earth from an old earthen wall, which, when pounded and reduced to a very fine powder, they put into the bottom of a bafon made of red copper ; over this layer of earth, they fpread a layer of camphire, and continue thus until they have laid four ftrata. The laft, which is of very fine earth, they cover up with the leaves of the plant po-bo, or penny-royal, and over the whole, place another bafon, which they join very clofely to the former, by means of a kind of red earth, that cements their brims together. The bafon, thus prepared, is put over a fire, which muft be managed fo as to keep up an equal heat : experience teaches them to obferve the proper de-gree.-But, above all, they muft be very attentive, left the plafter of fat earth which keeps the bafons together, fhould crack or fall off, otherwife the fpirituous parts would evaporate, and ruin the whole procefs. When the bafons have been expofed to the neceffary heat, they are taken off and left to cool; after which, they are feparated, and the fublimated camphite is found adhering to the cover. If this operation be repeated two or three times, the camphire is

$$
\text { Gg } 3 \quad \text { found }
$$

454 General description
found purer, and in larger picces. Whenever it is neceffary to ufe any quantity of this fubftance, it is put between two earthen veffels, the edges of which are furrounded with feveral bands of wet paper. Thefe veffels are kept for about an hour over an equal and moderate fire; and when they are cool, the camphire is found in its utmoft perfection, and ready for ufe.

This method of procuring camphire, even from the heart of the tree, may be practifed in all feafons of the year, which would not be the cafe, were it extracted like other refinous fubftances, that only flow during a certain fhort fpace of time. Befides, by lopping the branches, of the camphire-tree, lefs hurt is done to it, than by making incifions, which are always' hazardous.

## THE SIANG.

THE fang grows to the height of our chefl-nut-tree, and bears a fruit which ferves the Chinefe dyers as a fubftitute for the gall-nut. It is inclofed in a double hufk, and is of the fize of a cheftnat, which it alfo refembles in colour. The exterior hufk is that which is ufed properly for dying. Hogs feed upon this fruit, although it has a difagreeable tafte: Even the


#### Abstract

OF CHINA. 455 mountaineers of China affure us, that (after they have peeled off its interior rind by means of warm water, and boiled it in other water, to which vinegar is added) they can eat it with pleafure. The fiang grows, with little culture, to the north of Pc-king, and in the province of $\mathcal{T}$ che-kiang : perhaps it would thrive equally in the barren and mountainous regions of Europe,


THE LO-YA-SONG.

THIS name is given to a kind of pine, which is found near Keou-ouai, beyond the great wall. Its trunk, branches, leaves and fruit, exactly refemble thofe of our common pines; but it is diftinguifhed by feveral fingularities : all its leaves fall in autumn; its wood is exceedingly hard, and fit for various purpofes; but the fap it contains is poifonous. Thofe who are employed in cutting this tree, muft take great care. ?hat no drops fpurt out on the fikin; for it raifes blifters and pimples which cannot eafily be cured. If its root, which is of a reddilh colour, be put into the earth, or in water, it foon petrifies; it is then ufed for fharpening the fineft and beft-tempered tools. This petrification changes its figure fo little, that it cannot Gg 4 be
$45^{6}$ General description be perceived, unlefs one looks at it very clofely; but its weight is confiderably angmented.

> THE LUNG-JU-SHU.

THE trunk of this tree is equal in thicknefs to thofe of our large plum-trees, and divides itfelf into two or three principal branches, which are fubdivided into others, that are much fmaller. Its bark is of a reddifh gray colour, and fpotted like that of hazel. The extremities of its branches are knotty, very unequal, and full of pith. The trunk of this tree furnifhes planks, which are employed for making different pieces of furniture. The fruit, which refemble our cherries before they are ripe, grow from long, green and fibrous pedicles. The fk in of this fruit is very hard; it is fpeckled in fome places with fmall red fpots, and contains a greenifh fubftance, which, by maturity, is reduced to a kind of jelly. The Chinefe rub their hands with it in winter, to prevent chilblains.
THE TCHA-KÉ.

THIS tree, which has no bark on its trunk or branches, grows on the northern coafts. If it be thrown into the fire, even when green, it burns as readily as the drieft wood. If it be made
made into charcoal, it kindles very eafily, produces a frong heat, without fmell or froke, and lafts much longer than any other kind.

## THE TCHU-KOU.

THIS tree is fo much the more valuable to the Chinefe, as its inner rind furnifhes them with the greater part of the paper which they confume. When its branches are broken, the bark peels off in the form of long ribands. Were we to determine the fpecios to which this tree belongs, by its leaves, we fhould clafs it with the wild mulberry-tree; but, by its fruit, it has more refemblance to the fig-tree. This fruit adheres to the branches, without any ftalk, and when pulled before its maturity, appears, like the fig, to be full of milk. The great affinity it has, in many refpects, to the fig and mulberry tree, induce us to believe it to be a kind of fycamore. This tree grows on the mountains, and in a rocky foil. The Chinefe Herbal gives the following account of the manner in which it ought to be planted, in order to obtain moft plants, and of the beft quality.'At the vernal equinox, take the feeds of this ' tree, and, after having wafhed them, mix ? them with fefanum, and throw them into the
$45^{8}$ GENERAL DESCRIPTION

* earth at random. The fefamum will fpring - up with the firlt fhoots of the tchu-kou; but "great care mult be taken, not to crop the plant ${ }^{6}$ either in winter or autumn : you muft wait * till the fpring following. You muft then - fet fire to the field; and the fame year, you " will fee the plants of the tchu-kow fhoot up " with great vigour. At the end of three years, ' they will be fit to be cut, and their bark will © be proper for making paper."

THEKIN-KOUANG-TSEF, OR SOUR JUJUBE.
THIS is a large tree, the leaves of which are long and fharp-pointed. Its flowers have a greenifh tint; and the fruit it produces refemble large jujubes: on account of their beautiful yellow colour, they are called golden jujubes. Thefe fruit, when dried, retain a fourinh tafte ; and their golden colour changes to a delicate red. Their flone is hard, and thaped like a heart, as well as the kernel which they contain. Thefe ftones were formerly ufed by the fuperfitious votaries of idols, for making chaplets, on which feveral figures were engraven. It is faid, that this tree was brought originally from Bengal, and that great difficulty was found at

$$
\emptyset F \quad C H I N A
$$

frif to rear it in China ; but it is fo naturalized at prefent, that it rifes to the height of the talleft fruit-trees. Its wood, which is hard and of a very fine grain, is much ufed for different kinds of works.

THE TSE-SONG-YUEN-PE, ORIUNIPER CYPRESS.

THIS is one of the fingularities of nature. It partakes of the properties both of the juniper and of the cyprcfs-tree. Its trunk is about half a foot in diameter, and fhoots out, almoft where it fprings from the earth, a great number of branches, which extend on all fides, and are divided into feveral others, that form a top extremely thich and bufhy. All thefe branches are loaded with lcaves; fome of which refemble thofe of the cyprefs; others, thofe of the juniper: the latter are long, narrow and prickly, and are ranged along the branches in rows of four, five, and fometimes fix each; whence it happens, that, when the branches are viewed lengthwife, the leaves appear like ftars, having four, five or fix rays, the leaf ncareft the eye exactly covering that which is next to it, and leaving the intervals between the rows perfectly open. The fmall branches, or twigs, which are covered with

460 GENERAL DESCRIPTION
with thefe juniper leaves, are generally found below the principal boughs; and the branches that fhoot out from the upper part of the fame boughs, bear cyprefs leaves. There are found wholc branches which refemble thofe of the cyprefs; and there arc others, that, in like manner, have an affinity to the juniper alone; there are fome, alfo, which partake of the nature of both; and, lafly, there are others, that bear only a few cyprefs leaves, grafted, as it were, on the end of a juniper branch, or a fmatl juniper twig is fometimes feen fpringing from a cyprefs bough. When the tree is young, all its leaves refemble thofe of the juniper; but when it is old, they change into thofe of the cypreds.

The bark of this tree is very rough and unequal, and of a grayifh brown colour inclining to red. Its wood is of a reddifh white, like the juniper; but it is of a refinous nature. The leaves finell like cyprefs, and have fomething of an aromatic flavour to the tafle: they are fharp and bitter. This tree bears a fmall, round, green fruit, a little larger than that of the juniper: it contains two reddifh grains, fhaped like a heart, which are as hard as a grape-ftone.

## THE BAMBOO.

THE bamboo is a kind of reed, which grows to the height and fize of large trees. Its leaves are long, and bend backwards towards the points. Although the trunk is kollow, and divided at certain faces by knots, it is very ftrong, and capable of fuftaining an enormous weight. Bamboo-reeds arc employed for numberlefs purpofes. They are ufed as natural pipes to convey and diftribute water; when fplit lengthwife and divided into thin fips, they are woven into mats, trunks, and various other works; paper is alfo made of a certain pafte procured from them after they have been bruifed and fteeped in water. Although the bamboo grows in all the provinces of China, it is, how-ever, more abundant in the province of $\mathcal{T} c h e_{-}$ kiang, where whole forefts are found of it.

## THE ACACIA.

THE acacia, which was brought from America to France about the end of the laft century, is common in China. The Chinefe authors pretend, that the feeds exrracted from its pods are employed with fuccefs in medicine. 'The

462 GENERAL DESCRIPTION
' feeds of this trec,' fay they, ' muft be pit - into ox-gall about the beginning of winter, c in fuch manner, that they may be entirely "covered; dry the whole for a hundred days - in the fhade; and fwallow one of thefe grains ' daily, after meat.' From this remedy, they promife wonderful effects, and affure us, in particular, that the continual ufe of it amends the fight, cures the piles, and changes gray hairs into black. Another propercy of the acacia, is, that it furnifhes flowers which tinge paper, or filk, with three different thades of yellow. They are much uled by the Chinefe dyers. The Chinefe Herbal recommends the following method of cultivating this tree to thofe who wifh it to thrive and grow fpeedily.--' When ' you have collected,' fays the author, ' the ' feeds of acacia, dry them in the fun, and, a "little before the fummer folltice, throw them * into water. When they begin to grow, fow ' them in rich earth, mixing with them a fmall " quantity of hemp-feed. Each of thefe feeds - will fpring up; but the hemp mult be cut at - its proper feafon, and the young acacias tied - to fmall props, to fupport them. Next year, - fow hemp; and repeat the fame operation 6 the third, in order that the hemp may pre-

## Of chinA.

463
$\checkmark$ 'ferve thefe delicate plants from the injuries ' of the air and weather. When the young ' plants appear to be ftrong and vigorous, let ' them be tranfplanted, and they will become - beautiful trees.'

## the tea-plant.

AMONG the aromatic fhrubs of China, that which furnifhes tea holds the firft rank. It is not known by this name in the country; it is called tcha, and (by corruption, in fome of the maritime provinces) $t b a$, from which is derived our word tea.

Father le Comte, in his Memoirs, has given us a very accurate defcription of this fhrub.-- Tea,' fays he, 'grows in the valleys, and at ' the bottoms of the mountains. Rocky ground ' produces the beft ; and that which is planted. ' in a light foil is next in quality. The wort ' is found in earth of a yellow colour; but, in ' whatever place it is cultivated, care mult be ' taken to expofe it to the fouth: it then ac' quires more vigour, and bears three years ' after it has been planted. The root of the ' Thrub is like that of the peach-tree; and its ' flowers refemble the white wild rofe. When 'I entered the province of Fo-kien, I was ' Shewn

## 464 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

' fhewn, for the firft time, the tea-plant, upon
' the declivity of a little hill. It was only about
' five or fix feet in height. Several branches ' joined together, and feparated towards their
' upper extremities, formed a tufted top, almoft
' like that of our myrtle in Earope. The trunk,
' though to appearance dry, bore branches that
' were covered with beautiful green leaves.

- Thefe leaves were narrow and tapering to-
' wards the points, about an inch and a half ' in length, and indented round the edges. - The oldeft, which appeared of a whitifh co-- lour below, were brittle, hard and bitter. The
' young ones, on the contrary, were foft and
' pliable, of a reddifh tint, fmooth, tranfparent,
' and very agreeable to the tafte, efpecially aftor ' they had been chewed for fome time. As it
' was then in September, I found on them
- three kinds of fruit. On the young and tender
- branches, I obferved fmall foft berries, of a 'green colour, and filled with very fmall yel-
- low grains. On the reft of the branches, the
' fruit were as large as beans, but of different
' Thapes; fome of them were round, and con-
' tained a pea; others were long, and inclofed
' two ; and feveral were triangular, and con-
' tained three. The outer rind which inclofes
* this fruit, or rather feed, is green, fmooth, ' and very thick. Under the fecond, which is ' white and thinner, is a third pellicle, exceed-- ingly fine, that covers a kind of nut adhering ' to the rind by a fmall fibre, from which it ' derives its nourifhment. When this fruit is ' young, its tafte is fomewhat bitterifh; but,
' two or three days after it has been gathered,
' it lengthens, changes to a yellow colour, ap' pears dry and fhrivelled like an old filbert, ' and becomes very oily and bitter, .I found ' alfo upon thefe trees a third kind of old and ' hard fruit, the black exterior rind of which, ' being half open, difcovered within, a hard,
- brittle hufk, exactly like that of a cheftnut;
' but it was fo flatted and dried, that, after I
- had broken it, I could fcarcely difcover any ' veftige of fruit. In fome of them, I found this
' fruit reduced to powder ; and in others, I ob-
' ferved a very fmall nut, perfectly dry, and ' half covered with its firft pellicle. Among
' thefe fruits were a great number called female
' fruits, which had no germ. Thofe that have
- a germ, if they are fown, will produce trees; ' but the Chinefe generally make ufe of flips
'for raifing plants. That I might be better ac-
'quainted with the naiure of this tree, I had Vol. I. Hh 'the
' the curiofity to tafte the bark of the trunk and " branches; I alfo chewed the wood and fibres, ' both of which appeared to have no bitternefs, - and even, after a confiderable time, I only ' perceived a tafte fomewhat like liquorice, but ' very faint.'

The Chinefe diftinguifh feveral kinds of tea, .which may be reduced to the four following; the Song-lo tcha, the Vou-y tcha, the Lou-ngan tcha, and the Pou-eul tcha.

The firft takes its name from the mountain Song-lo, fituated in the province of Kiang-nan, under thirty degrees of north latitude. This mountain is not very extenfive; but it is entirely covered with thefe fhrubs, which are alfo cultivated at the bottoms of the neighbouring mountains. The Song-lo is the fame which we call greentea. It is cultivated almoft like vincs. and is cropped at a certain height, to prevent it from growing. This thrub muft be renewed every four or five years, becaufe, after that period, its leaves harden and become four. The flower which it bears is white, and thaped like a imall rofe compofed of five leaves. The Song-lo $t c h a$ may be kept for feveral years, and is ufed, with great fuccefs, as a remedy for various diftempers.

## OF CHINA

The Chinefe of the province of Kiakg-nan are the only people who crop the tea-fhrub; for every where elfe it is fuffered to grow to its natural fize, which fometimes extends to ten or twelve feet. When the tree is very young, they take care alfo to incline and bend down its branches, that they may collect its leaves afterwards with greater eafe. This fhrub grows often on the rugged backs of fteep mountains, accefs to which is dangerous, and fometimes impracticable. The Chinefe, in order to come at the leaves, make ufe of a fingular ftratagem. Thefe fteep places are generally frequented by great numbers of monkeys, which, being irritated and provoked, to revenge themfelves, tear off the branches, and fhower them down upon thole who have infulted them. The Chinefe immediately collect thefe branches, and frip them of their leaves.

The Vou-y tcha, which is known in Europe by the name of bobea, grows in the province of Fo-kien, and takes its name alfo from a mountain, called $V o u-y$, fituated in the diftrict of Kien-ning-fou. On this mountain, which is one of the moft celebrated in the province, is feen a great number of pleafure-houfes, temples and hermitages belonging to the bonzes of the Hh 2
fect

468 GENERAL DESCRIPTION fect of Tao-kia, who draw hither a prodigious concourfe of people. Thefe cunning priefts, to make the vulgar believe that this mountain is the refidence of the immortals, have artfully placed, in clefts of the rocks, and on inacceffible eminences, barks, chariots, and other things of the fame kind. Thefe ornaments, as whimfical is extraordinary, frike the minds of the credulous neople, who imagine that fuch decorations can only be the work of fome fupernatural power.

The Vou-y tcba is the tea moft efteemed univerfally throughout the empire. It agrees better with the ftomach, is lighter, fweeter, and more delicate to the tafte than the Song-lo. It is even fiid to have the property of purifying the blood, and of recruiting the ftrength of thofe who are debilitated. It differs from the Song-io tcha in the form and colour of its leaves, which are florter, rounder and blacker, and which communicate a yellow colour to water, without any harfhnefs. The leaves of the other are longer and fharper; an infufion of them renders water green ; and experience plainly thews that they are of a corrofive nature.

From thefe two firft kinds of tea, three others are compofed, the difference of which refults
from the choice of the leaves, and the time when they are gathered. That whicheontains only the frefh and tender leaves of young trees, is called mao tcha, or imperial tea. This is the moft delicate, and is that which is tranfported to court for the ufe of the emperor. Although it is feldom ever diftributed but in prefents, it may fometimes be bought on the fpot where it grows for twenty-pence or two fhillings the pound.

The fecond fort is compofed of older leaves. It is what is fold under the name of good Vou-y tcha. The reft of the leaves, that are fuffered to remain on the tree until they grow larger, form the third kind, which is fold to the common people at a very cheap rate.

The flowers of this fhrub alfo furnilh another kind of tea; but thofe who are defirous of procuring it, mult befpeak it, and pay an exorbitant price for it.

The Lou-ngan tcha, which is the third kind of tea we have mentioned, grows in the neighbourhood of the city of Lou-ngan-tclieou. It differs in nothing from the Song-lo, either in the configuration of its leaves, or the manner in which it is cultivated; but it has none of its noxious qualities ; it is neither fo beating, nor

$$
\mathrm{H} \check{h}_{3}
$$

is it fo harlh and corrofive-properties which refult, nodoubt, from the difference of the foils in which they grow.

The fourth kind is procured from a village named Pou-eul, fituated in the province of $Y$ unnan, on the frontiers of the kingdoms of Pegu, Ava, Laos and Tong-king. This village is become confiderable by its commerce: people refort to it from all parts; but the entrance of it is forbidden to ftrangers, who are permitted ta approach no nearer than the bottoms of the mountains, to receive the quantity of tea which they want. The trees that produce this tea are tall and bufhy; they are planted irregularly, and grow writhout any cultivation. Their leaves are longer and thicker than thofe of the Song-lo $t c b a$ and $V o u-y$ tcha; they are rolled up in the fame manner as we roll up our tobacco, and formed into maffes, which are fold at a dear rate. This kind of tea is much ufed in the provinces of $r_{u n-n o n}$ and Kuei-tcheou. It has nothing harfh; but it has not that agreeable talte and flavour which diftinguifh other kinds: when infured, it tinges water with a reddifh colour.

The kaiel tcha is a kind of tea ufed by the Mogul Tartars. It is only the refufe of the leaves of all the different teas which have been
fuffered
fuffered to grow hard, and which are mixed indifcriminately. Thefe people, who feed on raw flefh, are fubject to continual indigeftions whenever they give over the ufe of tea: on that account, they tranfport great quantities of it from China; and, in exchange, furnilh the emperor with all the horfes neceflary for his cavalry.

We muft not confound with real tea every thing that the Chinefe call tcba. What is fold in the province of Cbang-tong as a delicate tca, is properly but a kind of mofs, which grows on the rocks in the neighbourhood of the fmall city of Mang-ing-bien. A like kind of tea is diftributed in fome of the other northern provinces, which is not compofed of real leaves, although the merchants vend it under the name of tcha-yé, tealeaves.

If this delicious commodity is adulterated even in China, can we flatter ourfelves, that the tea we have in Europe is pure and without mixture? Perhaps we tapte nothing elfe, like many of the Chinefe, but mofs from the rocks of Mang-ing-bien.

When the tea leaves have bcen collected, they are expofed to the fteam of boiling water; after which, they are put upon plates of copper, and $\mathrm{Hh}_{4}$ held
held over the fire until they become dry and flarivelled, and appear fuch as we have them in Europe.

According to the teftimony of Kompfer, tea is prepared in the fame manner in the inles of Japan. ' There are to be feen there,' fays this traveller, ' public buildings erected for the ' purpofe of preparing the frefh-gathered tea. - Every private perfon who has not fuitable 6 conveniences, or who is unacquainted with - the operation, may carry his leaves thither as 6 they dry. Thefe buildings contain a great ' number of fmall ftoves raifed about three fect chigh, each of which has a broad plate of iron ' fixed over its mouth. The workmen are feated 6 round a large table covered with mats, and < are employed in rolling the tea-leaves which * are fpread out upon them. When the iron - plates are heated to a certain degree by the - fire, they cover them with a few pounds of - frefh-gathered leaves, which, being green and - full of fap, crackle as foon as they touch the - plate. It is then the bufinefs of the workman - to ftir them with his naked hands, as quickly ' as poffible, until they become fo warm, that ' he cannot eafily endure the heat. He then © takes off the leaves with a kind of fhovel, and
\$ lays them upon mats. The people who are em' ployed in mixing them, take a fmall quantiky' ' at a time, roll them in their hands always. ta ' the fame direction, while others keep conti' nually ftirring them, in order that they may ' cool fooner, and preferve their flarivelled ' figure the longer. This procefs is repeated ' two or three times, and even oftener, before ' the tea is depofited in the warehoufes. Thefe ' precautions are neceffary to extract all the ' moiture from the leaves.'
The people in the country beftow much lefs labour on the preparation of their tea. They are contented with drying the leaves in earthen veffels, which are held over the fire. This operation, being much fimpler, is attended with lefs trouble and expence, and enables them to fell their tea at a much lower price.

Common tea is preferved in narrow-mouthed earthen veffels; but that ufed by the emperor and grandees is inclofed in porcelain vafes, or in leaden and tin canifters covered with fine mats made of bamboo.

The Chinefe and people of Japan generally keep their tea a gear before they ufe it, becaufe, as they pretend, when quite new, it poffefles a narcotic quality which hurts the brain.

The Chinefe pour warm water over their tea, and leave it to infufe, as we,do in Europe; bat they drink it withoat any mixture, and even without fugar. The people of Japan reduce theirs to a fine powder, which they dilute with warm water, until it has acquired the confiftence of thin foup. Their manner of ferving tea is as follows. They place before the company the tea equipage, and the box in which this powder is contained; they fill the cups with warm water; and, taking from the box as much powder as the point of a knife can contain, throw it into each of the caps, and fir it with a tooth-pick until the liquor begins to foam; it is then prefented to the company, who fip it while it is warm. According to F. du Halde, this method is not peculiar to the Japanefe; it is alfo ufed in fome of the provinces of China.

Kien-long, the prefent emperor of China, in a little poem which he compofed in praife of sea, thus defcribes the manner of preparing it.- ' Put,' fays he,' on a moderate fire, a three$\rightarrow$ legged veffel, the form and colour of which -befpeak long fervices; fill it with limpid water \& procured from melted frow, hoil it to that \& degree which is neceflary to whiten fifh or
${ }^{6}$ redden

6 redden crabs, and inmediately pour it over ' the tender leaves of choice tea put into a cup
' made of the earth yiud. Leave it at reft, until ' the vapours, which at firft rife in abundance, 6 form thick chouds, afterwards gradually dif' perfe, at length vanifh, and leave only fome ' light exhalations floating on the furface; ' then, at leifure, fip this delicious liquor. It 6 will effectually difpel thofe five caufes of in-
' quietude that generally affail us, and difturb ' our repofe. We may tafte, we may feel, but ' we cannot exprefs, the foft tranquillity occa'fioned by a liquor prepared in this manner.'

The illes of Japan produce alfo abundance of tea. Kœmpfer, in his relation, gives an account of the different feafons in which the people of thefe iflands collect tea. The firft begins about the middle of the new moon which precedes the vernal equinox ; that is, the firft month of the Japanefe year, and falls about the end of our February, or commencement of March. The leaves gathered at this time are called ficki-tfiaa, or tea in powder, becaufe it is pulverized. Thefe young and tender leaves are only three or four days old when they are gathered; and, as they are exceedingly dear, they are generally referyed for the great people and princes. This
$47^{6}$ GENERAL-DEBCRIFTION
is the imperial tea of the Japranefe. The labourers employed in collecting it, do not pulk the leaves by handfuls, but pick them one by one, and take every precaution, that they may not break them. However long and tedious this labour may appear, they gather from four to ten or fifteen pounds a day.

The fecond crop is collected in the fecond Japanefe month, about the end of March or beginning of April. At this feafon, fome of the leaves are yet in their growth, and others have attained to perfection. This difference, however, does not prevent them from being all gathered indifcriminately. They are afterwards picked and afforted into different parcels, according to their age and fize. The youngeft, which are carefully feparated from the re?t, are often fold for leaves of the firft crop, or for imperial tea. Tea gathered at this feafon is called Too-ffita, or Cbinefe tea, becaufe the people of Japan infufe it, and drink it after the Chineie manner.

The third and laft crop of tea is gathered in the third Japanefe month; that is to iay, about our June. The leaves are then very numerous and thick, and have acquired their full growth. This kind of tea, which is called Ben-tfia, is
the coarfett of all, and is referved for the com-* mon people. Some of the Japanefe collect their tea only at two feafons of the year, which correfpond to the fecond and third, already mentioned; others confine themfelves to one general gathering of their crop, towards the month of June: however, they always form afterwards different affortments of their leaves.

The finelt and molt celebrated tea of Japan is that which grows near $U d-f i$, a fmall village fituated clofe to the fea, and not far diftant from Meaco. In the diftrict of this village is a delightful mountain, having the fame name, the climate of which is faid to be extremely favourable to the culture of tea; it is therefore inclofed by a hedge, and furrounded with wide ditches, which prevent all accefs to it. The teafhrubs that grow on this mountain are planted in regular order, and are divided by different avenues and alleys.

The care of this place is entrufted to people who are ordered to guard the leaves from duft, and to defend them from the inclemency of the weather. The labourers who are appointed to collect the tea, abftain from every kind of grofs food for fome weeks before they begin, that their breath and peripiration may not in the leaft
$47^{8}$ GENERAE DESCRIPTION
leaft injure the leaves. They gather them with the moft ferapulous nicety, and never touch them but with very fine gloves. When this choice tea has undergone the procefs neceifary for its preparation, it is efcorted by the fuperintendant of the mountain, and a ftrong guard, to the emperor's court, and referved for the ufe of the imperial family.

Several refearches have been made in Europe, to difcover the real tea-plant, or, at leaft, one which might be fubftituted for it. Simon Pauli, a phyfician and botanift, of Copenhagen, is the firft who pretended to have made this difcovery. On opening fome tea-leaves, he found fuch a refemblance in them to the Dutch myrtle, that he obftinately maintained they were productions of the fame kind ; but fome fkilful botanifts refuted this opinion. Father Labat afterwards imagined that he had difcovered the real tea-plant in Martinico; he pretended alfo to have had fome of the feeds of the Chinefe tea-plant, and that he raifed it in America. But it appears, after all he has faid, that it was only a fpecies of lyfimacbia, or what is called Weft-Indian tea. There have alfo been feveral other pretended difcoveries of the oriental tea-plant; but the falifity of them has
\$een perceived when they were clofdy exam mined. Many European plants have been ufed as tea, on account of fome refemblance either In the fhape of their leaves or in their tatte and favour. Among thefe plants, two or three fpon cies of fluellin have been highly extolled; witbout feaking of fage, myrtle, betony, agrimony; fweet briar, \&c. but, whatever the virtues of thefe plants may be, the real Afiatic tea is at prefent generally preferred to every thing that has as yet been fubftituted for it.

Several attempts have been made alfo to imtroduce the tea-fhrub into Europe; but the greater part of them have not fucceeded, eikher on account of the bad fate of the feed when procured, or becaufe proper precautions were not ufed to preferve them long enough in their ftate of vegetation. If thefe mifcarriages were owing to the former caufe, any farther attempts that raight be made to raife the tea-plant in Europe, would be lof labour. It is therefore abfolutely neceffary to procure feeds frefh and in good condition, and fach as are ripe and white, and capable of being preferved by their interior moifure. There are two methods of preferving thefe feeds; the find is, to inclofe them in wax, after they have been dried in the

40 GENERAE DEECRIPTION
furs ; the fecond is, to leave them in their hufks, and fhut them up clofely in a box made of tin : but neither of thefe methods has been attended with general fuccefs, whatever care has been taken to obtain frelh feeds, or to preferve them. The beft method would be, to fow frefh feeds in fine light earth, immediately on leaving Canton, and to cover them with wire, to fecure them from rats and other animals that might attack them. The boxes ought not to be too much expofed to the air, nor to that kind of dew which rifes from the fea. The earth in the boxes muft be neither hard nor dry, and fhould from time to time be gently watered with frefh or rain water; and when the hoots begin to appear, they ought to be kept in a light moifture, and fheltered from the fun. The tea-plants to be found in England have been procured by thefe means only, and, though feveral of the young rifing fhoots periihed, the laft method propofed is probably that which may be followed with greateft fuccefs, to tranfport rare and curious plants from China. The young tea-plants which are cultivated in the gardens round London, thrive well in the greenhoufe during winter; and fome of them ftand that feafon in the open air. Several bear leaves
from
from one to three inches in length, of a beautiful deep-green colour, and the young fhoots are ftrong and vigorous. The fineft plant known in England was raifed in Kew gardens; it was carried thither by Sir J. Ellis, who brought it from feed: but the plant at Sion, belonging to the duke of Northumberland, is the firft that ever flowered in Europe. An accurate drawing was taken of it when in flower; to which a botanical defrription was added. The engraver has perfectly fucceeded in copying the original, which was in the poffeffion of the late Doctor Fothergill-a gentleman no lefs diftinguifhed for his knowledge in natural hiftory, than for his zeal in promoting that fcience.

In 1766, the Abbé Gallois caufed a fhrub to be tranfplanted to $\mathcal{T}_{i} i a n o n$, under the name of the tea-plant ; but, on clofer esxamination, it was found to belong to the clafs of the camellia Faponica. France, however, can at prefent boaft of poffeffing this valuable fhrub. Mr. Gordon, an eminent nurferyman of London, tranfmitted. to the chevalier de $\mathcal{F}$ anffen a tea plant, which could not have been entrufted to one worthier of poffefling, or abler to cultivate it. This thrub is only a foot and a half in height, and its ftalk is equal in fize to the barrel of a goofe's

[^5]Ii
quill.

487 GENERAL DESCRIPTION
quill. It refembles a fmall eunomius, except that its leaves have the dark-green colour of the thyme-laurel, or of a young privct.
. As the tea fhrub is cultivated only in China and Japan, we may reafonably conclude, that it is indigenous to one of thefe countries, if not to both. It is not known what motive firft induced the Chinefe and people of Japanto make ufe of infufed tea; but it is probable, that their intention was to correct the bad qualities of their water, which is faid to be brackifh, and ill-tafted in feveral provinces.

Doctor Kalm, in his Travels through NorthAmerica, attefts the good cffccts of tea in like circumftances: ' Tea,' fays he, ' is held in dif'ferent degrecs of eftimation among differ' ent nations; but I am of opinion that we ' Thould be much better, and find our purfes ' heavier, if we had neither tea nor coffee. I - muft, however, be impartial; and I cannot help - faying, in praife of tea, that, if it is ufeful, it ' maft certainly be in winter, in journies like ' mine acrofs a defert country, where travellers ' cannot carry with them wine or other li' quors, and where, in general, the water is not - fit to be drunk, on account of the infects with ' which it abounds. In like cafes, it is very ' agreeable

## OF CHINA.

483
' agreeable when boiled and drunk with an in-
' fufion of tea. I cannot fufficiently extol the
' tafte it acquires by this preparation; it re' animates, beyond all expreffion, the exhaufted
' traveller. This I myfelf have experienced, as ' well as many others who have traverfed the 'defert forefts of America: in fo fatiguing' ' journies, tea is as neceffary as provifions.'

The Dutch Eaft-India company firft introduced tea into Europe in the beginning of the laft century; and the earls of Arlington and Offory imported a confiderable quantity of it from Holland to England, about the year 1666 : however, it is certain that, before this epocha, the ufe of tea was very common even in the coffee-houfes; for, in 1660 , a duty of one halfpenny per gallon was laid on this liquor when made and fold in public places.

In 1679, Cornelius Bontekoe, a Dutch phyfician, publifhed a treatife, in the Dutch language, on tea, coffee and chocolate. He there appears a ftrenuous advocate for tea. He is of opinion, that it cannot hurt the ftomach, though drunk to excefs, even to the quantity of two hundred difhes a day. It is very probable that political intereft influenced the doctor's affertion; for, as he was firf phyfician to the

484 GENERAL DESCRIPTION elector of Brandenbourg, and perhaps enjoyed confiderable diftinction, the praifes he lavifhed on tea muft certainly have extended the ufe of it. As the Dutch carried on a confiderable trade with Japan at the time tea was introduced into Europe, it is probable that this branch of commerce was firft eftablifhed by them : but, at prefent, China (and the province of Fo-kien in particular) is the general mart, where all nations go to furnifh themfelves with this commodity.

## THE COTTON-TREE.

COTTON, which forms one of the moft confiderable branches of the commerce of China, is cultivated with fuccefs in the fouthern provinces. The very day even that the labourers have reaped their grain, they fow cotton in the fame field, after having turned up the earth flightly with a rake. When the rain or dew has moiftened the ground, a fhrub is feen infenfibly fpringing up, which rifes to the height of two feet. The flowers appear about the beginning or towards the middle of Auguft ; they are generally yellow; but fometimes red. To the flower fucceeds a button, which increares, in the form of a pod, till it acquires the fize of a walnut.

> OF CHINA.
walnut. The fortieth day after the flower has appeared, this pod burfts, divides itfelf into three parts, and difcovers three or four fmall cotton balls of a bright white colour, the figure of which is almoft like that of thofe produced, by filk-worms. Thefe fmall downy balls adhere to the bottom of the pod, which is half open, and contains feeds for the following year. As all thefe fmall grains are flrongly attached to the filaments of the cotton, the Chinefe make ufe of a machine to feparate them. This machine is compofed of two cylinders highly polifhed, one of wood, and the other of iron, about a foot in length, and an inch in diameter, placed together in fuch a manner, that there is no vacuum between them. With one hand they put the firft in motion, and do the fame to the fecond by the foot; with the other hand they apply the cotton, which is drawn in between them by their motion, and paffes to the other fide, while the grains that are left behind, quite bare, fall to the ground. When the cotton has been thus freed from its feeds, it is carded and fpun, and afterwards made into cloth.

486 GENERAI DESCRIPTION

## THE KOU-CHU.

THE fhrub called kou-chu bears a great refemblance to the fig-tree, both in the make of its branches, and the form of its leaves. From its root feveral twigs or thoots generally fring up, which form a kind of buff ; but fometimes it confifts of only one shoot. The wood of the branches of the kou-chu is foft and fpongy, and covered with bark like that of the fig-tree. Its leaves are decply indented, and their colour and the texture of their fibres are exactly the fame as thofe of the fig-tree; but they are larger and thicker, and much rougher to the touch.
'This trec yields a kind of milky juice, which the Chinefe ufe for laying on gold-leaf in gilding. They make one or more incifions in the trunk, into which they infert the edges of a fhell, or fomething elfe of the fame kind, to receive the fap. When they have extracted a fufficiency, they ufe it with a fmall brufh, and delineate whatever figures they intend for the decoration of their work. They then lay on the gold-leaf, which is fo frongly attracted by this liquor, that it never comes off. .

TIIE TONG-TSAO.
STRANGERS who vifit China are generally ftruck with the beauty of the artificial flowers made by the Chinefe, and which at firft fight appear to be natural: but if the Chinefe furpafs European artifts in thefe kinds of fmall works, they are more indebted for their fuperiority to the materials they employ, than to their indufry. Neither filk, cotton, nor any kind of paper or cloth, is employed in the compofition of thefe flowers. The thin, tranfparent fubfance of which their leaves are formed, is the pith of a certain flrub, called by the Chinefe tong-tfao. It is a kind of cane or bamboo, much refembling our elder-tree; but its pith is whiter, clofer and lefs fpongy.

The Chinefic Herbal fays, that the tong-tfao grows in dark, fhady places. Another author adds, that this recd rifes to the height of fix feet; that its leaves refemble thofe of the nymphæa, or water-lily; but that they are thicker. Its trunk is divided, like the bamboo, by knots, between which are comprehended feveral pipes, each about a foot and a half long. Thefe pipes are generally larger towards the root of the plant.

This

This fhrub is cut every year; and it fhoots up a new ftem the year following. When there pipes have been collected, they are tranfported in barks to Kiang-nan, where the pith is extracted, and prepared for the hands of the workman. When taken from the pipes it muft be carefully preferved from moifture, by keeping it fhut up in a dry place: without this precaution, it would be entirely ufelefs.

The firft operation confifts in reducing this pith to thin, delicate leaves. The piece of pith, which is larger or finaller, according to the fize required in the leaves, is laid on a plate of copper, between two other very thin plates; and while the workman rolls it with one hand between thefe plates, with a knife like that ufed by fhoe-makers for cutting their leather, which he holds in the other, he takes off a very fine paring, in the fame manner as carpenters cut fhavings from a fmooth piece of wood with a plane. Thefe thin leaves of pith are formed into packets, and tranfported to Pe-king, for the ufe of thofe who make artificial flowers. When the artifts have occafion to paint them, or to give them different forms, to prevent them from tearing, they dip them very foftly in water; it would even be fufficient, before they are ufed.
ufed, to expofe them for fome time in a cold, moift place : by obferving this precaution, there is no danger of their breaking or tearing.

There is another obfervation to be'made, refpecting the colours with which thefe delicate leaves are painted.' The Chinefe workmen for this purpofe employ only very foft colours, which have neither gum', mercury, cerufe nor' vitriol in their compofition. Thefe colours are mixed with water, and muft be very light. The artift gives the leaves the various figures requifite, by preffing them on the palm of his hand with particular inftruments made for that ufe. He then puts together, with a fmall pair of pincers, the different pieces of which the flower is to confift, and joins them with glue made of nomi, which is a kind of rice, very thick, and well boiled. The hearts of fome of thefe flowers, fuch as rofes, are made of filaments of hemp painted to refemble nature.

It is with the pith of this tree, that the Chis nefe fo perfectly imitate fruits, and the fmall infects that adhere to them; efpecially:butterflies. If, for example, they intend to imitate a peach, they begin by forming the fkeleton of the fruit of fmall bits of cane fplit exceedingly thin. They then fill the hollow part with a
pafte compored of the faw-dult of an old peachtree, which communicates the frmell and flavour of a peach to the fruit. After this, they give it a natural fhape, and cover it with two or three leaves of the tong-tfao, which are painted with proper colours. Nature is fo exactly copied in thefe artificial fruits, that, at firt fight, they deceive ftrangers, and even the avidity of birds. The thin pellicles of the tong-tfao give to the fhades of the fruit a frefhnefs and appearance of reality, that neither filk, nor the beft-prepared wax, can ever be made to imitate.

The Chinefe artifts fucceed equally in making artificial butterffics, which have fo great a refemblance to nature, that they appear to be animated. They ufe only thefe thin leaves of pith, which they faffion almoft in the rame manner as thofe defigned for flowers. The butterflies, which they are fondeft of imitating, are of the fpecies called in China ye-fei-flying: leaves. There are few other kinds fo beautiful and various in their colours.

## betel and tobacco.

THE Chinefe, in imitation of almoft all other eaftern nations, ufe the betel-leaf as a fovereign remedy for thofe diforders which at-
tack the breaft and ftomach. The fhrub which bears this leaf grows like ivy, and twifts around other trees. Its leaves are long and tharppointed, but broad towards the ftalk, and of a pale-green colour. The Chinefe cover them with quicklime, and wrap them around the nut areca, which in fhape greatly refembles a nutmeg. They chew thefe leaves continually; and they pretend that they ftrengthen the gums, comfort the brain, expel bile, nourifh the glands of the throat, and ferve as a prefervative againft the afthma-a difeafe which, from the heat of the climate, is very common in the fouthern provinces. They carry beteland areca in boxes, and prefent it when they meet one another, in the fame manner as we offer tobacco.

Although the ufe of the latter plant is not fo extenfive in China as in Europe, this country produces it in great abundance. The Chinefe do not reduce their tobacco to powder, becaufe they only ufe it for fmoking. They gather the leaves when they are very ripe, and card them almoft in the fame manner as wonl. They afterwards put them below a prefs, where they fqueeze them, as tanners fqueeze thofe remains of their bark which are formed into lumps for burning.

THE

## THE BFLVIDERE, OR CHENOPODIUM.

THE belvidere is a plant which feems to be much neglected in Europe, and to which our botanifts have hitherto paid little attention : thofe of China, however, do not think that it ought to be banilhed from the tribe of ufeful plants. The following are the properties attributed to it in the Chinefe Herbal.-After having faid, that it is about the end of March, or beginning of April, that the belvidere fprings up from the earth; that its fuckers or fnoots rife to the height of eight or nine inches, in Thape of a child's fift half fhut; that it afterwards extends itfelf, and fends forth a number of branches loaded with leaves like thofe of flax; and that, as it grows, its branches arrange themfelves naturally in the form of a beautiful pyramid; it adds, that its leaves, yet tender, abound with juice, and have a very agreeable tafte; that it may be eaten as a fallad with vinegar, to which a little ginger has been added; that, being prepared like other leguminous plants, and baked with meat, it gives it an agreeable and pleafing flavour; that, when in its full beauty, its leaves become hard and unfit for the table; but that nourifment
is then found in its root, which ferves as a refource in times of famine and fcarcity. When the belvidere has attained to its natural fize, the Chinefe feparate its principal ftalk from the reft, and put it into a lye of athes, which cleans and foftens it, and frees it from all impurities of the bark. After this bath, it is expofed to the fun; and, when dry, it is baked and feafoned. With, regard to the root, which has fomething of a violet-colour, they frip off the fkin by filaments, which may be boiled and eaten: but what is particularly fought after is the root itfelf, of which, when reduced to powder, they collect only what remains in the bottom of the veffel, and form it into fmall loaves, that are baken by being held over the fteam of boiling water. People of a delicate tafte will fcarcely be tempted to admit this difh at their tables; but is it not ufeful to point out to the poor peafants, that, in cafes of neceffity, they may always have recourfe, without danger, to this ruftic food? In fuch cafes, they will be indebted to the Chinefe for having made the firft trial, which, for the moft part, is dangerous.

The Chinefe Herbal cites the example of four mountaineers, who, having lived on nothing but the leaves, roots and ftalks of the belvidere,

494 General descidiption
videre, with which their country abounded, hat neverthelefs enjoyed perfect health to a very great age. It relates alfo the converfation of two philofophers, who,'forefeeing the approaching fall of a dynafty, and, difgufted with the tumult, reftraint and dangers of the court, where they had paffed part of their lives, cxhorted one another to feek for a fafe retreat.--' Let us d employ our knowledge,' faid one of them, ' in making reflections upon the prefent ftate - of government; and our prudence, to fecure s ourfelves againft the misfortunes which are ' ready to fall upon thofe in place.'- ' I am ' entirely of your mind,' faid the other, fqueez.ing his hand ; 'I intend to retire into my na' tive country, where I fhall live in repoic, ard ' have little intercourfe with men: the bely-- dere will always fupply me with food; and ' the great river Kiang with excellent water to 'drink.'

The Chinefe Herbal allo fays, that, to render the belviderc more fruitful and fubftantial, fire mult be fet to the mountains which are covered with it, becaufe its own athes are the beft manure for the ground, and fupply it with a nourifhing moisture.

## ARTEMISIA, OR MUGWORT.

MUGWOR T, which has been long known. in China, is called there $y$-tfao, or the pbyfician's berb. The Chinefe diftinguifh it into three kinds; common, thorny, and wild mugwort. Some botanifts fpeak of a fourth fpecies, which is found on the higheft mountains of the fouthern provinces, and which grows only to the height of a foot in fevcral years. It appears, that the chief properties of this plam are, that it exhales an agreeable odour, and enjoys a kind of immortality. It is put into vafes, to ornament cabinets; and, when it has been well dried, it may be preferved as long as artificial flowers.

Common mugwort grows in every province of China, as well as in all thofe of France: but both ancient and modern authors agice in recommending, for medicinal purpofes, only that of $K$-tcheou or Ming-tcheou. It is greatly to be wifhed that our writers on botany, in imitam tion of the Chinefe, when they give us a lift of plants, would alfo mention the places where the beft are to be found. It is certain, that difference of foil and climate gives different degrees of frength and virtue to plants; and this know-
knowledge is confidered by, the Chinefe as one of the noft effential parts with which a phyfician ought to be acquainted. The leaves and feeds only of the mugwort are ufed in China; and the fame virtues are attributed to the former, as in Europe, for female diforders. The juice of this plant, when green, is ufed to ftop fitting of blood; and the feeds are employed for the fame purpofe. The dofe of the latter is divided into two parts; one of which is reduced to afhes, and put into water in which the other has been boiled. Thefe afhes, it is faid, when taken as fnuff, immediately ftop blcedings of the nofe. The Chinefe prefcribe this plant alfo with fuccefs for dyfenteries which proceed from weaknefs, and for pleurifies, and diforders of the ftomach. An infufion of the ftalks and buttons of mugwort is recommended to old people, inftead of tea.

Mugwort was formerly confidered as a. powerful prefervative againft witchcraft. The ancient books relate, that, in the third century of the Chriftian æra, it was cuftomary for people to gather this plant before fun-rife, and to fufpend it afterwards over their doors. The poets of the feventh century mention this cuftom, and defcribe the manner in which the
ftreets
ftreets of the capital were ornamented with is on the fifth day of the fifth moon; that is to fay, about Midfummer.

Prickly mugwort really bears prickles on the edges of its leaves. It grows on the mountains; but the fofteft and moft efteemed is gathered on thofe which lie on both fides of the great wall. Thefe leaves, when dried, are beaten with a wooden bat, until the foft part is entirely feparated from the fibres; and, after they have been dipped in water mixed with faltpetre, they are ufed for tinder: no other kind is known at Pe-king; and it is equal to that of Europe. It appears that the ancient Chinefe made ufe of the foft part of this plant for quilting, for making mattreffes, and even for cloth. They alfo employed it for manufacturing a kind of paper.

Wild mugwort grows upon the mountains, and in the fteepeft places. Its leaves are more deeply indented than thofe of the comman kind ; it is alfo fofter, and of a more filky textare. The ancient Chinefe made great ufe of it in medicine. In all the northern provinces, the principal remedy for moft difeafes confifted in making deep punctures in the body, upon which fmall balls of the down of this plant,
Vol. I. Kk were

498 GENERAL DEECRIPTION
were burnt. Thefe punctures were made with needles of gold or fleel, without drawing blood; and all the fkill required in the phyfician, was to determine their number and depth, and where it was neceffary to make them. They ufed this down, as we have faid, by way of tinder; but, inftead of faltpetre, they fubftituted a preparation of fulphur. It was neceffary that the down of the mugwort fhould be very old; and, as every kind of fire was not proper for lighting thefe falutary balls, they employed mirrors made of ice or metal. 'They caufed ' the water to freeze,' fays the ancient text, ' in a round convex veffel; and the ice, being * prefented to the fun, collected its rays, and ' fet lire to the down of the plant.' The literati are not at prefent agreed, whether the fecret of curing difeafes by punctures be preferved; but thefe downy balls are fill ufed inItead of cupping-glaffes, in apoplectic and lethargic cafes. Girdles made of this down are alfo recommended for the feiatica; and thofe afflicted with the rheumatifm in their legs are advifed to quilt their fockings with it. The mugwort deftined for this purpofe is gathered only in autumn; and care mult be taken to pick that which has the fhorteft and fofteft down.

CHAP.

## C H A P. VII.

## FLOWERING-TREES.

THE OU-TONG-CHU.

AMONG the trees which nature feems to have deftined for the ornamenting of gardens, we muft diftinguifh that which the Chinefe call Ou -tong-cbu. It is of a great fize, and refembles the fycamore. Its leaves are large, and proceed from a ftalk about a foot in length. This tree is fo bufhy, and loaded with fuch bunches of flowers, that it entirely excludes the rays of the fun. Its fruit grows in a very extraordinary manner.-Towards the month of Auguf, fmall clufters of leaves begin to fhoot out from the extremities of the branches, which are entirely different from thufe that cover the reft of the tree; they are fmaller, whiter and fofter, and fupply the place of flowers. On the edges of each of thefe leaves grow three or four finall grains, of the fize of a pea. Thefe grains contain a white fubftance, the tafte of which greatly refembles that of an unripe walnut.

## 500 GENERAL DESCRI安TION

## THE MOLIEN.

THIS is another flowering tree, the branches of which are few in number, very flender, full of pith, and covered with red bark interfperfed with fmall white fpots. It bears few leaves; but they are large, and very broad at the lower extremity, and adhere to pedicles, which increafe fo much in fize towards the bottom, that they feem to inclofe the branch. This tree blows in the month of December, and produces large flowers, formed of feven or eight fharp-pointed oval leaves, from the extremities of which proceed long filaments. Some of the flowers of the molien are yellow, others red, and others white. All the leaves fall when the flowers appear, or when they are ready to blow.

> THE LA-MOE.

THIS fhrub pretty much refembles our laurel, both in its form and fize; but its branches are more extenfive, and its leaves are attached, two and two, to fhort pedicles. The fize of thefe leaves decreafes in proportion to their diftance from the extremities of the branches. This tree produces its flowers in winter ; they

## OFCEINA. 501

are yellow, and have an agreeable fmell, refembling that of rofes.

THE TCHA-HOA.
THE Chinefe diftinguifh four kinds of the tree which they call tcha-boa. Its wond and foliage give it fome refemblance to the Spanifh laurel. Its leaves, which grow in alternate rows along each fide of its branches, do not drop in winter. They are of an oval figure, fharp pointed, indented on the edges, and of a darkgreen colour above, and yellowifh below. The buds of the $t c b a-b o a$ are covered with a foft, white down ; they blow in December, and produce double flowers, fupported by a calix, and of a rofe colour. Thefe flowers have no pedicle, and adhere immediately to the branch. The fecond kind of tcha-bca is very lofty. Its leaves are round at the extremity; and its flowers are large and red. The flowers of the two other kinds are whitifh, and fmaller.

## THEYU-LAN.

THIS tree, the moft beautiful of thofe thatt ornament the Chinefe gardens, rifes to the height of thirty, and fometimes of forty feet. Its trunk, which is Atraight, and well-proportioned,

$$
\mathrm{Kk}_{3} \quad \text { has }
$$

has very few large branches, and fcarcely any imall. Its leaves are of a beautiful green colour, but few in number: they never begin to fhoot forth until the flowers are half blown. All its branches are crowned with flowers, the fcent of which perfumes the air to a great diftance around : they blow almoft all at the fame time; but they continue only a few days. The $y u$ lan, when in bloom, refembles a walnut-tree, cropt like a pine, and having its branches ftuck full of beautiful lilies. The flower (which confifts of five or fix leaves, and even of eight, difpofed like thofe of a rofe) is fupported by a calix of four leaves, briftly within, and terminating in a point. From the middle of the flower rifes a green, f pongy pittil, furrounded at its hafe by fmall fibres, the tops of which are loaded with ftamina. This flower produces an oblong fruit of a green colour, which reddens towards the end of fummer. Its whole fubftance is fibrous, and almoft as hard as wood.

The $y u$-lan is divided into feveral fpecies; fuch as double and fingle; the $y u$-lan with white flowers, and that which produces flowers of a peach colour. The flowers of this tree are much more beautiful and in greater abundance when it is young; but it bears no fruit. When it is
twenty years old, its flowers are fmaller and fewer ; but' almoft all of them produce fruit. The $y u$-lan requires no other culture than to be planted in a place fheltered from the north winds, and to be watered in fpring. It is raifed in boxes, as orange-trees in France. When it has fhed its leaves, the florifts remove it to the green-houfe; and, by accelerating its vegetation by means of a ftove, they procure flowers from it in the beginning of the year: it is then appropriated for ornamenting the interior apartments of the women. The governors of the fouthern provinces fend fome of them every year to be prcfented to the emperor.

THE AUTUMNAL HAI-TANG.
THIS beautiful fhrub, originally broughe from the bottom of the rocks which border the fea-coaft, has been cultivated in China for more than fourteen centuries. It is celebrated as often in the works of the Chinefe poets, as rofes and lilies are in thofe of ours. Painters and embroiderers ornament almoft all their works with its foliage and flowers. The ftalk of the autumnal bai-tang is of a cylindric form, and fhoots forth a number of branches of a purple tint towards their bafes, and full of knots, which

$$
\mathrm{K} \mathrm{k}_{4} \quad \text { are }
$$

are alfo of a purple colour round the edges. It produces a number of fhoots, the talleft of which are about two feet and a half in height. Its leaves (which are much indented, of an oval form towards the ftalk, pointed at their upper extremities, and full of fmall prickles) grow almoft always oppofite one another on the branches, and at the fame diftance as the knots. Their colour above is a deep-green; that below is much lighter, and alnoft effaced by their fibres, which are large, and of a delicate purple: all thefe leaves together have a beautiful effect to the eye. The flowers grow in bunches at the extremities of the branches. Each flower is compofed of four petals, two great and two fmall, refembling in colour the bloom of a peach-tree, and which have almof the fame figure as the bloffom of our cherry-trees. The two large are cemented one upon the other, in the form of a purfe; and when they blow, the two fmall blow alfo in their turn; and then the whole four reprefent a crofs. The piftil is compofed of very bright yellow grains, which fcparate gradually one from another by the lengthening of the filaments to which they adhere; they then open into little bells, and compofe a fmall yellow tuit, fupported by a flender
ftalk,
ftalk, which rifes above the petals. The calix, which fuftains each of the flowers, is compofed of two purple-coloured leaves, united in form of a purfe. In proportion as the flowers grow and increafe in fize, the two leaves of the calix open, become pale and dry, and drop off. The flowers, fupported by fmall ftalks, feparate one from the other, and produce of themfelves other flowers, which rife up from a new calix.

The autumnal hai-tang is propagated from feed, but with difficulty. It thrives beft in a fandy foil ; dung or mould deftroy it; and great care muft be taken to refrefh it only with the pureft water. As it cannot endure the fun in any feafon, it is always planted below walls that are expofed to the north. It generally begins to flower about the end of Auguft. After it has produced feed, all its branches are cut; and it commonly fhoots forth new ones before the fpring following; but it is neceffary to heap up gravel and pieces of brick round its roots, to prevent them from rotting. Notwithftanding all the care that is taken to cultivate this tree at Pe-king, it does not thrive fo well there as in the fouthern provinces. The fmell of its leaves has an affinity both to that of the rofe

500 GENERAL EESCRIPTION
and the violet; but it is weaker, and never extends to any great diftance.

THE MOU-TAN, OR PEONY-SHRUB.
THE mou-tan is a wild fhrub improved by culture, and has been known in China for fourteen hundred years. It is called alfo hoa-ouang, or the king of flowers, and peleang-kin (an bundred ounces of gold), in allufion to the exceffive price given formerly by fome of the virtuofi for certain fpecies of this plant. A traveller, as is faid, having found a peony on a fhrub in the mountains of Ho-nan, was fo ftruck with the novelty, that he thought it worthy of ornamenting a parterre. He tore up fome of the roots, with the earth adhering to them, carried them home, and planted them in his garden. A bonze, who was ignorant of the origin of this peony fhrub, imagined he could procure one like it by grafting. His attempt was attended with fuccefs; and the peonies he raifed were more beautiful than thofe which had beca brought from the mountains. This plant foon engaged the attention of all the florifts; and, by careful and continual culture, it was brought to perfection. The infatuation became general ; and even the provinces contended for fuperiority
periority of fkill in raifing it, that they might have the glory of fending the fineft to the emperor.

The mou-tan feems to claim pre-eminence, not only on account of the fplendour and number of its flowers, and of the fwect odour which they diffure around, but alfo on account of the multitude of leaves which compofe them, and of the beautiful golden fpots with which they are interfperfed. This plant, which is of a thrubby nature, fhoots forth a number of branches, which form a top almoft as large as thofe of the fineft orange-trees that are planted in boxes. Some of the mou-tan have been feen eight or ten feet in height. The reafon why few are raifed at prefent to this fize is, becaufe their flowers ate lefs beautiful, and their branches, being too weak, cannot fuftain their weight. The root of the mou-tan is long and fibrous, of a pale-yellow colour, and covered with a grayifh or reddifh rind. Its leaves arc deeply indented, and of a much darker green above than below. Its flowers, which are compofed of numberlefs petals, blow like a rofe, and are fupported by a calix compofed of four leaves. From the bottoms of the petals arife feveral ftamina, without any order, which bear on their tops fmall antherx,
antherx, of a beautiful golden colour. The fruit bend downwards like thofe of common peony, burf when they become dry, and fhed their feeds.

There are three kinds of mou-tan; common mou-tan, dwarf mou-tan, and the mou-tan tree. The laft fpecies feems at prefent to be loft: fome of them were formerly feen which were twenty-five feet in height. Dwarf mou-tan is little efteemed: a few plants of this kind are only cultixated to preferve the fpecies. Common' mou-icn, which has always been highty prized by florits, is more generally difperfed. It is raifed, like an efpalier, in form of a fan, bufh or orange-tree. Same of them flower in fpring, others in fummer, and fome in autumn. Thefe different fpecies muft each be cultivated in a different manner.

The vernal and fummer moutan are thofe that are cultivated in greateft number; thofe of autumn require too flavifh an attention -during the great heat of the dog-days. The mou-tan of each feafon are divided into fingle and double; the former are fubdivided into thofe of an hundred leaves, and a thoufand leaves; the fecond have a large calix filled with famina, that bear on their tops gold-coloured antherx,
antherx. Thefe are the only kind that produce feed. The flowers of both appear under the different forms of a bafon, pomegranate, marigold, \&c. Some of the mos-tan are red, others violet, purple, yellow, white, black and blue; and thefe colours, varied by as many fhades, produce a prodigious number of different kindsWe are affured, that the Chinefe florifts have the fecret of changing the colour of their moutan, and of giving them whatever tints they pleafe; but they cannot effect this change but upon thofe plants which have never produced flowers.

A mou-tan, to pleafe the eye of a Chinefe florift, muft have a rough, crooked ftalk, full of knots, and of a blackifh-green colour; its branches mult crofs one another, and be twifted in a thoufand fanaftical figures; the fhoots that proceed from them mult be of a delicate green fhaded with red; the leaves muft be large, of a beautiful green, very thick, and fupported by reddifh ftalks; its flowers mult blow at different times, in form of a tuft, be all of the fame colour, and fand erect upon their ftems; they muft alfo be feven or eight inches in diameter, and exhale a fweat and agreeable odour.

## THE PE-GE-HONG.

THIS fhrub is remarkable for the beauty and fingularity of its flowers, and above all for their duration, which has given rife to its name, pé-gé-bong, red of a bundred days. This beautiful plant, brought to perfection by culture, was originally found in the mountains of Fou-kien, and now holds a diftinguifhed rank in the Chinefe gardens. Its leaves, fometimes placed alternately, fometimes oppofite one to another, are of an oval form, a little fharpened towards the points : they are not indented, and their thicknefs is fomewhat between that of the leaves of the phillyrea and plum-tree.

The flowers of the pé-gé-bong blow at Pc king about the beginning of July; they grow in bunches at the extremities of the branches, and fucceed one another in fuch a manner, that they continue till the end of September, provided they are fheltered from the heat of the fun. The calix which fupports them is fpong), fhaped like a bell, and of a pale ycllow within, and red on the outfide. It bends over the rifing fruit, and becomes dry when it ripens. From this calix arife fix crimfon-coloured petals, in the form of feftoons, which are long, round at

## OFCHINA.

top, and fupported by as many flender, whitilh ftalks.

The trunk of the pé-gé-bong is very thick; it even appears that the Chinefe florifts have endeavoured to reduce it to a dwarfilh fizea form for which they fhew an uncommon fondnefs *. They give its boughs time neither to fpread nor to grow bigger; they prune them in autumn, and leave only a few fmall branches, in order that they may be loaded with a greater abundance of flowers. The culture of this tree requires little care; nothing is neceflary but to place it in a green-houfe during winter, to expofe it to the fouth on the return of fpring, wo water it at proper feafons, and to fhelter it from the fun and the exceffive heats of fummer.

## THI. Y̌-IIANG-HOA.

THE branches of this fhrub are fo weak, that they can neither grow upwards, nor fupport themfelves; the florifts therefore prop

* The Chinefe gardeners have the fecret of reducing the fize of trees and Ghrubs of every kind, and even of towers. The miffionaries affure us, that they have feen cedars and pines which were only two feet in height, though more than forty years old; the trunks, branches and leaves were, however, very well proportioned.
them
them with bamboo-reeds, to which fmall hoops are attached. Its leaves are of a deep green above, and of a pale below; they are flaped like the head of a lance, and are fupported by very long ftalks; round which they form two cars. All the property of this tree confifts in the exquifite odour exhaled by'its flowers, which are of a yellowifh-green colour.-Their finell is fa fruect and arrecable, fay the miffionaries, that there is no flower exifing which can be compared soith the delicious ye-hiang-hoa. Owing to the delicacy of this plant, or to that of its perfume, it has fcarcety any fmell during the clay-time: from this fingularity it has its name, ye-biang-hoa, or the flower which finells in the nigbt. The weak conftitution of the ye-biangboa, originally from the fouthern provinces, hinders it from thriving at Pe-king. The niceft attention of the moft careful florift is fcarcely fufficient to make it endure the winter through in a green-houfe, and to preferve it for a few years : on this account, it is exceedingly dear. A fine plant of the $y$ e-biang-boa cofts twenty or thirty ounces of filver. The viceroy of the provibce of Tiche-kiang fends feveral of them every year to Pe-king, to ornament the emperor's apartments.

THE

## the lien-hoa, or water-mily of

 china.THIS aquatic plant has been known in China from the remoteft antiquity. The poets of every dynafty have celebrated the fplendour and beauty of its flowers; and its excellent virtues have made the Doctors Tao-ffee rank it among thofe plants which are employed in the compofition of the liquor of imnortality Its flowers are formed of feveral leaves, difpofed in fuch a manner, that they refemble large tulips when they are half open. Thefe Howers blow like a rofe. From the middle of the flower rifes a conical piftil, that becomes round and fpongy ; it is divided into feveral cells, filled with oblong feeds, covered with a hurk like the acorn, and compored of two white lobes, in the middle of which is the germ. The ftamina of the nenufar are formed of very delicate filaments, the tops of which are of a violet-colour. The leaves of this plant are round, broad and large; they are thick and fibrous, and inderted towards the middle; fome of them float on the furface of the watef, to which they feem to be cemented; others rife to different heights, and are fupported by long Vor. L L 1 fteris.

## 514 General description

ftems. Its root, which is of the fize of a man's arm, is very hardy; it is of a palé-yellow coloùr within, and milk-white on the outfide, and is fometimes twelve or fifteen feet in length. It creeps at the bottom of the water, and attaches itfelf to the mud by filaments, which fpring out from the contractions that divide it at intervals. The falk which fupports the flowers and leaves of this plant is full of round holes to its extremity, like thofe of the root.

There are four kinds of nenufar known in China; the yellow, which is very rare, and fuppofed to be the fame as that of Europe; the red and white rofe-colcured, with fingle flowers; the red and white rofe-coloured, with double flowers; the pale red friped with white, which is feldom feen, efpecially with double Howers. This plant requires no culture ; it is propagated by feed, but fooner by the root. One of its fingularities is, that it endures much drought, though it grows naturally in water; and that, though a friend to warmth, it thrives and produces the fineft flowers beyond the great wall, and in the northern provinces. The nenufir does not bud before the end of May; but it thoots forth very rapidly; and its leaves form a verdure on the furface of the water; which is
very delightful to the eye, erpecially when the flowers, in full bloom, unite the variety of their colours.

The feeds of the nenufar are eaten in China as we eat filberds in Europe; they are more delicate when they are green, but harder of digeftion; they are preferved in many different ways with fugar. The root of this plant is allo admitted by the Chinefe to their tables: in whatever manner it may be prepared, it is equally wholefone. Great quantities of it are pickled with falt and vinegar, which they referve to eat with their rice. When reduced to powder, it makes excellent foup, with water and milk. The leaves of the nenufar are much ufed for wrapping up fruits, fifh, falt provifions, \&c. When dry, the Chincfe mix them with their imoking tobacco, to render it fofter and milder.

> THE KIU-HOA, OR PARTHENIUM.

PARTHENIUM, fo much neglected in Europe, and which, on account of its fmell, has been banithed fiom our parterres, is indebted only to its culture for the diflinguilhed rank it holds among the Chinefe flowers. The ikill of the florifts, and their continual care, have brought this plant to fo great perfection,

$$
\mathrm{L} \mathrm{I}_{2} \quad \text { that }
$$

SI6 GENERAL DESCRIPTYON
that Europeans fcarccly know it. The elegance and lightnefs of its branches, the beautiful indentation of its leaves, the fplendour and duration of its flowers feem, indeed, to juftify the florimania of the Cainefe for this plant. They have, by their attention to its culture, procured more than three hundred fpecies of it: every year produces a new one. A lift of the names of all thefe kinds would be equally tedious and difgufting; we fhall only fay, in gencral, that, in its flowers are united all the poffible combinations of thapes and colours. Its leaves are no lefs various: fame of them are thin, others thick; fome are vcry fmall, and fome large and broad; fome are indented like thofe of the oak, while others refemble thofe of the cherry-tree; fome may be feen cut in the form of fins, and others are found ferrated on the margin, and tapering towards the points.

Parthenium is propagated in China by feed, and by fuckers, grafts and flips. When the florifts have a fine plant, they fuffer the feeds to ripen, and, about the end of autumn, fow them in well-prepared earth. Some keep them in this manner during winter, others fow them in fpring. Provided they are watered after the winter, they fhoot forth, and grow ra-
pidly. After the parthenium has flowered, all its branches are cut three inches from the root, the earth is hoed around, and a little dung is mixed with it ; and when the cold becomes fevere, the plant is covcred with ftraw, or an inverted pot. Thofe that are in vales are tranfported to the green-houfe, where they are not watered. In fpring, they are uncovered and watered, and they fhoot forth a number of ftems: of thefe fome florifts leave only two or three, others pull up the ftalk, together with the whole root, and divide it into feveral portions, which they tranfplant elfewhere. There are fome who join two 1 ips , of different colours, in each of which, towards the bottom, they make a long notch, almoft to the pith, and afterwards tie them together with packthread, that they may remain clofely united : by thete means they obtain beautiful flowers, variegated with whatever colours they choofe.

Parthenium requires a good expofure, and frefh moift air that circulates frecly : when thut up clofely by four walls, it foon languifhes. The earth in which it is planted ought to be rich, moift and loamy, and prepared with great care. For refrefhing it, the Chinefe ufe only rain or river water; and in fpring-time, they

518 General description
mix with this water the excrements of filkworms, or the dung of their poultry; in fummer, they leave the feathers of ducks or fowls to infure in it for feveral days, after having thrown into it a little faltpetre; but in zutunn, they mix with the water a greater or fimaller quantity of dricd excrement reduced to powder, according as the plant appcars more or lefs vigorous. During the great heats of fummer, they water it morning and evening; but they moiften the leaves only in the morning: they alfo place fmall fragments of brick round its root, to prevent the water from preffing down the earth too much. All this attention majappear trifling ; but it is certain, that it is founded upon experience and obfervation; and it is only by the affiftance of fuch minute care, that the patient and provident Chinefe has been able to procure, from a wild and almoft flinking plant, fo beautiful and odoriferous flowers.

> OF CHINA.

519

## C H A P. VIII.

HERBS AND MEDICINALPLANTS OF CHINA.

THE fimples, and medicinal plants of China, form one of the richeft and moft extenfive branches of its natural hiftory. As it is not our intention to give a Chinefe herbal, we fhall content ourfelvcs with defribing only the moft ufeful.

RHUBARB.
THE tai-boang, or rbubarb, grows in feveral provinces of the empire; but the beft is that of Se-tcbuen, which is confidered as much fuperior to that of Cben- $\kappa$ or $\mathcal{T} h i b e t$. The ftem of rhubarb refcmbles a fmall bamboo, or Chinefe cane; it is hollow, and exceedingly brittle ; it rifes to the height of three or four feet, and is of a dufky violet-colour. In the fecond moon (that is to fay, in the month of March), it fhoots forth long, thick leaves, which are very rough to the touch: thefe leaves are ranged four by four on the fame ftalk, and form a calix. The fowers of this plant are yellow, and fometimes

$$
\mathrm{LI}_{4} \quad \text { violet. }
$$

520 GENERAL, DESCRIPTION
violet. At the fifth moon, it produces a fmall black feed, of the fize of a grain of millet, which is pulled in the eighth. The roots of rhubarb reckoned to be beft, are thofe that are heavieft and moft variegated with veins. It is very difficult to dry them, and to free them from all their moifture. The Chinefe, after having cleaned them, cut them in 乌ices an inch or twa in thicknefs, and dry them on ftone flabs, un, der which large fires are kindled. They keep entinually turning thefe flices on the warm flabs; but, as this operation is not fufficient to dry them thoroughly, they thread them like beads, and fufpend them in a place expofed to the greateft heat of the fun, until they are in a cindition to be preferved, without danger of fpoiling.

The Chinefe phyficians agree perfectly with thofe of Europe, refpecting the virtue and properties of rhubarb; they, however, feldom ufe $t$ iis plant without preparation : they are fonder of it in decoction, when fome other fimples have been' added. Rhubarb is Cold cheap in China: a pound of the beft cofts only two pence,

THE HIA-TSAO-TONG-KONG *
THE fhape of this plant is exactly like that of a worm. It has the head, eyes, hody, feet on each fide of the belly, and the different rings which the fk in forms upon the back of that reptile. This refemblance is more particularly. fenfible when the plant is young and frefh; for if it be kept any time, efpecially when expofed to the air, it becomes blackifh, and foon corrupts, on account of the foftnefs of its fubftance. This plant is aboul nine-tenths of an inch in thicknefs, and of a yellowifh colour; it is very rare in China, where it is accounted an exotic, and is feldom to be met with but in the emperor's gardens. The bra-tfao-tong-kong grows in Thibet ; it is alfo found, though in fmall quantities, in the province of $S e-t c b u e r$, which borders on Thibet, and in Hou-quangThe properties of this root are almoft the fame as thofe attributed to gin-feng, except that the frequent ufe of it does not, like gin-feng, occafion bleedings and hemorrhages, It Atrengthens the ftomach, and invigorates thofe who are ex-

[^6]haufted ${ }_{\text {, }}$

522 GENERAE DESCRIPTION
haufted, either by exceffive labour or long ficknefs. F. Parennin affures us, that $h \in$ himfelf experienced its happy effects:' " The tfong-zou, ' or viceroy of the two provinces of Se-tchuen ' and Chen-fi,' fays this celebrated miffionary, - having come to Tartary to pay his refpects to " the emperor, brought with him, according to
' cuftom, a prefent of what he had found mofl

- Imgular in his own department, or in thofe
* around him, and, among other things, fome * roots of the bia-t far-tong-kong. As I had - been formerly acquainted with him, he did ' me the honour of a vifit. I was then ex' tremely weak, by the frequent journies I was c obliged to take during the feverity of a cold ' and wet feafon. I had loft my appetite, could ' enjoy no reft, and continued in a lingering
' ftate, notwithftanding the different remedies
' which had been prefcribed for me. Affected
c by my fituation, he recommended the ufe of
* this root, with which I was then entirely un-
' acquainted; and he taught me the method of
* preparing it: Take five ounces, faid he, of this
- root, tegetber with its falk, and ftuff it into the
- belly of a tame duck, webich muft be roafted at a " Now fire. When it is done, take out the root, as
' its virtue will have pafled into the fleß of the 'duck,
- duck, and eat this flefh, morning and evening, for ' eight or ten days. I made the experiment, and ' recovered both my appetife and ftrength.
' The emperor's phyficians, whom I con' fulted concerning the virtue of this root, ex' plained it to me in the fame manner as the ' tong-tou; but they told me, they never pre' fcribed it but in the palace, on account of its ' fcarcity; and that, if any of it was found in - China, it could only be in the province of 'Hou-quang. I wrote to one of my friends who ' refided there, and begged him to fend me fome ' of it ; he did fo; but the little I received was ' black, old and carious, and colt four times its ' weight in filver.'

> THE SAN-T'SI.

The $\int_{\text {in }}-f / f$ is found with much lefs difficulty. This plant grows without cultivation in the provinces of Koci-tcheou, 1̌un-nan and Se-tcbuen. It fhoots forth eight ftems, which have no branches; that in the middle, which is higheft, has three leaves at its extremity; but the other feven have only one each. From this determinate number of leaves the plint has its name, fan-t $f$, or three and feven. All thefe falks proceed from a round root,four inches in diameter.

From

From this root fpring a great number of others; which are oblong and fmaller, and covered with a rough, hard rind, the interior fubftance of which is foffer, and of a yellowifh colour. Thefe little roots are what is generally ufed in medicine. The middle ftem only bears flowers, which are white: they grow from its extremity, in form of grapes, and blow towards the end of the feventh moon; that is to fay, in the month of July.

When the Chinefe are defirous of propagating this plant, they cut the root in flices, which they put into the earth about the vernal equinox; in the fpace of a month, it fhoots forth its ftalks; and, at the end of three years, the plant has acquired its utmoft fize. The Chinefe phyficians ufe the fon- $t /$ for wounds and fpitting of blood: they confider it, above all, as a fovereign fpecific in the fimall-pox. Some of the miffionaries tell us, that they have feen furprifing effects from it, and that the blackeft and moft virulent puftules become bright and of a beautiful red, as foon as the patient has fwallowed fome of this root. A fpecies of gray goats are very fond of browfing upon its leaves; and, as they feed upon them, Their blood, fay the Chinefe, becomes impregnated with their me-
dicinal qualities. The blood of there goats is ufed for the fame purpofes as the plant itfelf.

## THE CASSIA-TRLE.

THE caffia-tree is found in that part of the province of Yun-nan which borders on the kingdom of Ava. This tree is very high, and bears long pods : on that account, the Chinefe have given it the name of tcbang-ko- $f(\mathrm{e}-\mathrm{cbu}$, tbe tree weith oblong fruit. Thefe pods are indeed longer than thofe feen in Europe. They are not compofed of two convex hulks, like thofe of common leguminous plants, but of a kind of hollow pipe, divided into feveral cells, which contain a pulpy fubftance entirely like the caffia ufed in Europe.
GIN-SENG.

THE moft efteemed and valuable of all the plants of China is gin-feng, which the Mantchew Tartars call orbota, the queen of plants. The Chinefe phyficians always fpeak of it with a kind of enthufialm, and enumerate, without end, the wonderful properties which they afcribe to it. The root of gin-feng is white and rough; its ftem is fmooth and very round, and of a deep-red colour. Its height is various, according

526 General description
ing to the vigour and fize of the plant. From the extremity of the ftalk proceed a number of branches, which are equally diftant one from the other, and, in their growth, never deviate from the fame plan. Each branch bears five very fmall leaves full of fibres, the upper part of which is of a dark green, and the lower of a fhining whitifh green. All thefe leaves are finely indented on the margin. A particular ftem of this flower produces a fmall clufter of very round red berries; but they are not fit for eating. Their ftone, which refembles thofe of other fruits, is very hard, and contains the germ from which the plant is propagated. Gin-jeng is eafily diftinguifhed by its form, and the colour of its fruit, when it has any; for it often happens that it bears none, though its root may be very old.

This plant decays and fprings up every year; and its age may be known by the number of fems it has already fhot forth, fome remains of which always adhere to the upper extremity of the root. The Chinefe never fow the feed, becaufe it has never been known to grow : this probably has given rife to the fable which the Tartars relate concerning the reproduction of ginfeng. They affure us, that a bird eats the feed when
when put into the earth, but, not being able to digeft it, voids it with its dung, after it has been purified in its ftomach, and that it fprings up in the place where it is left. It is more probable that the germ of this plant is flow in opening, and that the hufk which contains it remains long in the earth before it fends forth any root. This conjecture appears to be fo much the more probable, as fome gin-feng roots are found which are neither longer nor thicker than the little finger, although they have fucceffively produced more than ten or twelve ftems in as many years.

This plant, at all times, has been the principal riches of Eaftern Tartary, where it grows. It is never found but between the 39th and 47 th degrees of northern latitude, and between the 10 th and 20 th of eaftern longitude, reckoning from the meridian of Pe-king. All that extent of country is occupied by a long chain of fteep mountains, covered with almoft impenetrable forefts. It is upon the declivities of thefe frightful mountains, and in their forefts, in the neighbourhood of fiffures made by floods, below rocks, at the roots of trees, and in the middle of herbs of every feecies, that this vaMuable plant is found. It never grows in plains, valleys
valleys or marfhy ground, or in the bottomis of the clefts made by torrents, or in places that are too open. If the foreft happens to take fire, and to be confumed, this plant does not again appear there until three or four years after. It delights in the fhade, and every where feems defirous of fheltering itfelf from the rays of the fun, which proves, that it is naturally an enemy to heat.

No private perfon is allowed to gather ginfeng: : it belongs entirely to the emperor, who fends ten thoufand foldicrs into Tartary every year to collect it. The following order is obferved by this army of herbalifts-After having divided the ground, each troop, compofed of an hundred men, range themfelves in a line, with certain intervals between every ten. They then advance gradually in the fame direction, fearching for the plant gin-feng with great care; and in this manner they traverfe, during a fixed number of days, the fpace affigned them. When the term prefcribed is expired, mandarins appointed to prefide over this bufinefs, and who todge under tents in the neighbourhood, fend people to the different troops, to convey their orders, and to fee that their numbers are complete; for it often happens, that fome of themi
lofe
lofe themfelves, or are devoured by favage beafts. As foon as they are miffed by their companions, they make fearch after them for fome time; but they afterwards refume their labour, obferving always the fame order.

Thefe herbalifts fuffer many hardfhips during this expedition. They carry with them neither tents nor beds, as they are fufficiently loaded with their provifion of millet, toafted in the oven, which is their only nourifhment. During the whole time of their journey, they are expofed to all the inclemencies of the air, and pafs the night, as chance directs, either in the forefts or at the bottom of fome rock. The mandarins fend them, from time to time, pieces of beef, or other flefh, which they devour, bloody, and half raw. In this manner do thefe ten thoufand men pafs thofe fix months of the year which are employed in collecting gin-Seng.
' The Chinefe phyficians,' fays F. Jartoux, - have written whole volumes on the virtues of ${ }^{c}$ this root. They introduce it into almoft all ' the remedies which they prefcribe to the. ' great; but it is too expenfive for' ordinary ' people. They pretend that it is a fovereign ' remedy for weaknefs occafioned by exceffive Vol' I. Mm 'labour,
' labour, either of body or mind; that it dif-

- folves phlegm, cures the pleurify and diforders
' of the lungs; that it ftops vomiting, frengthens
- the ftomach, quickens the appetite, diffipates
' vapours, animates the vital fpirits, and pro-
'duces lymph in the blood; and, laftly, that it ' is good for giddinefs, dimnefs of fight, and ' that it prolongs the life of old people. It can ' hardly be fuppofed, that the Chinefe and Tar' tars would prize this root fo highly, had it ' not always produced the happieft effects. ' Thofe even who are in perfect health make - frequent ufe of it, to render them more vigor' ous and robuf.'

Gin-feng, notwithftanding the great quantity of it procured from Tartary, is always very dear in China: an ounce of this root, even at Pe-king, cofts feven or eight ounces of filver.

Chinefe Tartary, however, is not, perhaps, the only country where this valuable plant grows. F. Fofeph-Francis Lafituu, a Jefuit miffionary, pretends to have had the glory of difcovering it in Cianada about the beginning of the prefent century. This miffionary had never heard of gin-feng when he refided in France; but the affairs of his miffion having called him to Quebec about the month of October, 1715 , he hap-
pened to meet with the tenth volume of Lettres Edifiantes, which contains a defcription of this plant, by F. Fartoux. As F. Lafitau had a particular attachment to the fudy of botany, which he had cultivated for a long time, he read with great avidity the detail given concerning this unknown plant, in the letter of the abovementioned miffionary. He was particularly ftruck with what F. fartoux fays, when fpeaking of the foil where the gin-feng grows, that, ' If it be found in any orher country, it mult ' be in Canada, the mountains and forefts of ' which have fo near an affinity to thofe of Tar' tary.' This remark awakened the curiofity of F. Laftau, and made him conceive a defign of fearching for this plant in New France.
' My hopes of difcovering it,' fays he, 'were, " however, very faint, and at firft made little ' impreffion upon me. I had even formed from ' the letter of F. Fartoux but an imperfea and ' confufed idea of the plant; and my occupa' tions during winter had almoft effaced it. I ' did not feel my defire revive for making - this difcovery until the fpring, when, having - often occafion to traverfe the woods, my at' tention was particularly attracted by thofe 'prodigious numbers of fimples and plants Mm2
' with which they are filled. I endeavoured ' therefore to recall the idea I had formed of gin-eeng ; I mentioned it to fcveral of the In' dians; I deferibed it in the beft manner I ' could; and they gave me hopes that. I fhould ' at length be able to difcover it.
' Although neceffity has made all people ' who live in a flate of naturc botanifts and ' acquainted with fimples, their refearches were © ineffectual; and I was beginning to defpair
' of finding gin-feng, after three months labour ' and fatigue, when I accidentally difcovered it

- near a fmall houfe which I had erected. Being
' then in its maturity, the vermilion-colour of - its fruit attracted my eye. I had not long ' confidered it, when I fufpected that this plant ' might be that which I had been in queft of. I - immediately tore it up with great eagernefs, ' and, overjoyed at my good fortune, carried it ' to an Indian woman, whom I had alfo em-
' ployed to fearch for it. As foon as fhe faw it,
- The knew it to be one of their common reme-
' dies, and explained to me the ufe which the
' Indians made of it. Whatever prefumption I
' had of this plant's being the real gin-feng, I
'durft not, however, affure myfelf of it, as I
- had left my books at Quebec, and had only a
- confured
' confufed idea of F. Fartour's letter: I there-- fore wrote an exact defrription of the plant I ' had found, and fent it to one of my friends at ' Quebec, who was well acquainted with bo' tany, in order that it might be compared with ' the letter, and with the engraving which re' prefents the gin-feng of China.
- My friend had no fooner received my letter, ' than he fet out for Montreal, and came to ' mect me at the place where I then refided, ' which was only three leagues diftant. We - immediately began to traverfe the woods; and
' I allowed my compranion to have the plea-
' fure of difcovering the gin-feng, without my
- affiftance. We did not continue our fearch
' long. As foon as we had gathered a few flips,
" we retired to a ncighbouring hut, to compare
' them with the book. $\cap_{n}$ the firf view of the
' plate, the Indians knew their Canadian plant,
' which they called garent-ogucn; and we had
' the pleafure of finding the moft perfect re-
- femblance in our plant to the engraven figure,
- in fhape, colour, proportion, leaves, feeds,
' knots and filaments ; in fhort, the whole de-
' fcription which F. Jartoux gives of it, was
' fully verified before our eyes; but what was ' my furprife when, towards the end of this $\mathrm{Mm}_{3} \quad$ mif:


## 534

 GENERAL DESCRIPTION، miffionary's letter, obferving an explanation ' of the word gin-feng, which fignifies, in Chi' nefe, refemblance of man, or man's thigh, I per' ceived that the Iroquoife word garent-oguen ' had the fame fignification! Garent-oguen is ' a word compofed of orenta, which fignifies ' the legs and thighs, and of oguen, which means ' things feparated. Making, therefore, the fame ' reflection as F. Fartoux on the oddity of this ' name, which has been given it on account of ' a very imperfect refemblance that is even not ' found in many plants of this fpecies, while it ' is common in others of a very different na' ture, I could not help concluding, that the - fame fignification could not have been affixed ' to the Chinefe word and to that of the Iro'quoife, without a communication of ideas, ' and confequently of perfons. This obferva' tion ferved to confirm me in the opinion $I$
' had before entertained, that America and Afia ' formed only one continent, and that they ' were united either by Tartary, or to the north ' of China.'

Though F. Fartoux in his letter has given a very accurate defcription of gin-feng, we however think proper to add that of F. Laftau, as it will better enable the reader to form an idea
of this celebrated plant, and to judge how far the Chinefe gin-feng refembles that of Canada, and what affinity there is between them.

There are two diftinct parts in the root; one of which is a kind of turnep, and forms the body; the other is like the neck of the turnep: The body of the root differs very little from our common turneps; it appears whitifh within, and a little rough. When cut horizontally, a circle is perceived formed by the outer rind, which is very thick, and contains a white ligneous body, reprefenting a fun, by feveral ftiaight lines, that proceed from the centre. The root, as it dries, becomes yellowifh on the outfide ; but the interior fubftance always preferves its whitenefs.

Thefe roots are various in their fhapes; there are fome which abound with fibres, and there are others that have fcarcely any. Some are plain, long and fmooth; others, on the contrary, are divided into two or three roots, which reprefent, but badly, the body of a man, taken from the middle downwards. From this refemblance, the plant has got the name of ginfeng, and garent-oguen.

The neck of the root is a collection of knots twifted together, and placed obliquely and alMm 4
teinately

536 GENERAE DESCRIPTion ternately, fometimes on one fide, and fometimes on another. Thefe knots are the remains of different ftems produced by the root; and they indicate the age of the plant, which fends forth only one ftem every year. That may be feen forming in autumn, which is to grow up the fpring following. F. Lafitau fays, that he found roots which appeared, by the number of their knots, to be near an hundred years old. Sometimes a new neck is feen fpringing forth from the former, which then becomes barren, The flem fhoots out from the neck of the root about two or three inches before it appears above the earth. The difficulty it finds of making its way bends it a little; but after it has got beyond the furface, it rifes to the height of a foot, and even more. It is generally very ftraight, and perfectly fmooth.

While the ftem is in the earth, the earth whitens it ; but after it has got into the open air, it changes to a beautiful mixture of green and purple, which becomes fainter, and difap. pears towards the knot.

This knot is formed on the fummit of the ftem, and is the centre of three or four branches $\boldsymbol{\gamma}_{\boldsymbol{\gamma}}$ which are named thus, in conformity with the defcription of F. fartoux; but, properly, they

## OFCHINA.

537
are only the ftalks of the leaves. Thefe branches extend horizontally, and, being equi-diftant, form with their leaves an inverted umbrella, very convex. The green and purple colours again appear at the knot, but they vanifh infenfibly as they approach the leaves.

Some of thefe ftems have only two branches; others, according to F. fartour, have five, and fometimes feven. F. Laftau never faw any fo bulhy in Canada. The commoneft have three or four branches; but thofe which have four are the prettieft.

Each branch contains five unequal leaves, which all proceed from the fame centre, and extend in form of the open hand. The leaf in the middle is larger than the two next to it; and thefe again are larger than the two fuccceding. F. Fartoux fays, that there are never fewer than five leaves on each branch: however, F. Lafitau relates, that he found fome which had only four, and even three. It may be eafily perceived, that thefe variations are the confequence of fome derangement occafioned by an accidental caufe, or by the weaknefs of the plant, which has not had fap fufficient to make it expand to its natural fize, or which has

## $53^{8}$ GENERAL DESCRIPTION

become deformed through want of nourifhment.

The leaves of this plant are oblong, indented, and extremely delicate ; they are fharp-pointed, and bent back towards the extremity. The upper part is of a deep-green colour; the lower is whitifh, and much fmoother. The fibres, which are difperfed over all their fuperfices, are more raifed on the lower part; and they appear to be covered with fmall white briftes.

The colours of the ftem and branches become brighter as the plant approaches maturity; the green changes to a tarnifhed white; the red is no longer fo dark; and, in autumn, the leaves, as they dry, either affume the colour of thofe that are withered, or a colour fomething like that of the leaves of the crecping vine.

From the centre of the knot where the branches are formed, arifes a pedicle about five or fix inches high, which appears to be a continuation of the firft ftem, and fupports a clufter of finall flowers, to which, fome time after, fucceed very beautiful fruit. Thefe fruit are grafted at the bafe, upon the fame number of fmall fibres, or diftinct pedicles, an inch in length, equi-diftant, and difpofed in a fpherical form.

When the clufter begins to blow, a flower is perceived, which is exceedingly fmall, but very open and diftinct. It confifts of five whitifh petals, difpofed in the form of a ftar, as the flowers of thofe plants generally are which have the fhape of an umbrella. They are fupported by a calix, in the centre of which is a piftil, compofed of two filaments, bent backwards, and furrounded by five ftamina, covered with a rough, mealy fubftance, extremely white. Thefe ftamina foon become dry, and the mealy duft difappears.

The piftil of the fower, uniting itfelf to the calix, changes to a fruit, the fidcs of which are flatted, and marked with thick lines, that, in their dircction, lave a great refemblance to the ribs of a melon. In proportion as the fruit fills, thefe lines are effaced, and at length appear very faint; the fk in becomes thinner, and more delicate, and covers a fpongy pulp, of a yellow colour, from which iffues a vinous juice, that has almoft the fame tafte as the root and leaves of the plant. This fruit is at ${ }^{\text {firft }}$ of a deepgreen colour, which whitens as it approaches maturity ; but, when ripe, it changes to a beautiful crimfon, and turns black as it dries. When the fruit is perfect, it contains two cells: thefe inclofe
inclofe as many ftones, which are hard, and marked on the fides in the fame manner as the fruit ; their kernels are white, and bitter to the tafte, like the reft of the plant. There are frine of thefe fruits which have only one ftone; and there are others, that contain three.

Befides the clufter we have mentioned, fome fruit are often obferved upon feparate pedicles, which are attached to the common pedicle, two or three inches below the umbrella; and fometimes they fpring forth from the fame knot from which the branches proceed. F. Lafitau even affures us, that he has feen upon one of thefe plants a fecond clufter, well formed, and growing upon a fecond pedicle, that fhut up by the fide of the former.
F. fartoux fays, that thefe fupernumerary fruit indicate that other gin-feng plants may be found by keeping always in the fame point of the compafs towards which they are placed. F. Lafitau did not find this obfervation hold good in Canada : he is even of opinion, that no general conclufion can be drawn from thefe variations, except that the plants have greater ftrength, or are fupplied with more nourifhment, or, perhaps, that they grow in a better foil, and enjoy an expofition more favourable to their increafe.

## OFCHINA.

We may form the fame judgment refpecting thofe ftems which have more, or fewer branches. It is natural to believe, that they produce them either higher, or in greater number, in proportion to the fap which they contain : there are, however, fome very high ftems which have only two branches; and others, much lower and fmaller, which have four. It appears, alfo, that the roots fhould increafe according to their age ; yet fome are found very old, that are exceedingly flender; and others, which are remarkable for their fize, though only feven or eight years old. The fame root perhaps may undergo variations, and be bulkier one year, and flenderer another: at any rate, it is certain that they are fufceptible of change, according to the difference of the feafons. In fpring, they are very fpongy, and their fap has no confiftence; in autumn, they are firmer and more folid, and feem to have reached the utmoft point of perfection.
F. Lafitau loft no time in tranfmitting to France an account of his difcovery of garentoguen; and he fent thither one of the plants, preferved in fpirits of wine. It was firft prefented to the regent, and afierwards depofited in the cabinet of M. de $\mathcal{F} u f l i z u$, who was then

542 GENERAL DESCRIPTION profeffor royal of botany. Upon the report Which this gentleman made to' the Academy of Sciences, M. Danti d' Ifnard, who had formerly held the fame office, ftarted fome doubts, which appeared to feveral members of that illuftrious body to be well founded.

All the difficulty feemed to be, what degree of credit was due to the relation of F. Fartour, to whofe account was oppofed that of Kampfer, who, in 1712 , had publifhed a book *, in which, when fpeaking of gin-feng, he gives a figure of this plant, entirely different from that of the miffionary. The authority, thercfore, on each fide being equally refpectable, it is reafonable that we fhould fufpend our judgment.

Kempfer is not, however, the only author whofe teftimony can be oppofed to that of F. Fartoux. Joln Pbulip Breynius publiihed at Leyden, in ${ }_{1700}$, a differtation on the gin-jeng root, and caufed a figure to be engraven, which has no refemblance eithcr to the plant of Kempfer, or to that of F. fartoux. The author, it is true, gives his ideas only as conjectures, not knowing what fide to take, lince travellers differ

[^7]fo much in their defcriptions of the plant gms. feng : he is even of opinion, that the variationof their accounts ought to be attributed only to the different names given to this root. It is probable that thefe names are thofe of different plants which have been improperly confounded with gin-feng.

We may, then, fafely conclude, that all the authors who have given us different defcriptions of this plant have taken them from the falfe relations of others, who have been deceived alfo by a refemblance of names. The greateft fhare of credit, however, feems due to the account of F. fartoux, who not only examined the plant in Tartary, where the learned allow that it grows, but was actually prefent when the army of Tartars, fent thither by the emperor of China, was employed in collecting it. An eye-witnefs, whofe veracity and knowledge can neither be called in queftion, is, without doubt, better able to give us a juft idea of this plant than Kempfer or any other author who never was in Tartary.

The figure of the gin-feng, which F. fartoux delineated himfelf, muft appear fo much the more correct, and to be depended on, as it perfectly correfponds with that found in Ca-

## 544 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

nada. We may even fay, that F. Lafitan's difs covery was made in confequence of that figure, and the conjectures of his brother miffionary, who feemed to reafon with much juftnefs, when he judged, from the idea given him of Canada, that this part of America was likelier to produce gin-feng than any other country, as it had fo great a refemblance, both in climate and foil, to the forefts of Tartary.

Thefe reafons induced the Achdemy of Sciences to believe, that the Canadian plant, and that defcribed by F. fartoux, were real gin-feng. Meffrs. de and Vaillant even wrote to F. Lafitau, that they were of opinion, it could no longer be doubted.
F. Lafitau made no fecret in Canada of his difcovery. Garent-oguen is known there to cvery body, efpecially at Montreal, where it is fold by the Indians at a dear rate. None of it is found at Quebec; and lefs of it grows on the north, than on the fouth fide of the river; but it is to be met with ingreat abundance towards the fonth, round Montreal, in the neighbourhood of lake Huron, and in the country of the Iroquoife. This plant is not to be found in woods of every kind: it would be vain to fearch for it in thick forefts encumbered with under.
ynderwood. It isonly in woods conffiting of tall, ftraight trees, the trunks of which are bare, and free from bufhes, that it is to be difcovered, amidft a prodigious variety of medicinal herbs, that grow at the bottoms of thefe trees, and between roots and fones, from which it is torn with difficulty.

The gin-feng of Canada delights in the fhade, as well as the other plants with which thefe forefts are filled. The roots that are left behind in the earth when this plant is dug up will grow, but they never pioduce others. The feafon proper for gathering it is that of its maturity ; that is to fay, from the month of September till the firft appearance of fnow. Thofe who are defirous of drying the leaves to ufe as tea, muit colleat them about the end of Auguf, before they grow yellow.

The root is much better when dried than when it is taken from the earth : it is then impregnated with a moifture, which deftroys its virtue, but which evaporates as it dries. This difference may be perceived even by its tafte, as it is much fronger when dried than when it is green.

When F. Lafitau had difcovered the garent oguen, he imagined that this plant might be a

Vol. I.
N n
${ }^{\text {species }}$

546 GENERAL DESCPIPTION
fpecies of mandragora, or mandrake. He was confirmed in this opinion by a paffage of F.Martini, who, fpeaking of gin-feng, affures us, that no better idea can be given of it than by faying, that it is almof like our mandrake, except in its fize, which is fomewhat fmaller; and that he does not doubt of its having the fame properties and virtue.

But, if this miffionary was right in calling gin-feng a fpecies of mandrake on account of its figure, he was deceived, if he thought this name equally applicable to it from a refemblance of properties. Our mandrakes are narcotic, cooling and ftupefying; and thefe qualities do not belong to gin-feng : however, the idea of F. Martini induced F. Laftau to carry his refcarches farther. As he knew that all modern botanifts agree in opinion, that our mandrake is different from the mandragora of the ancients, he thought that by a little inquiry, and comparing gin-feng with what the ancients have faild of their mandragora, he should perhaps find it to be the ${ }_{\alpha}^{\prime \prime}$, eqeoropopppos of Pythagoras, and the mandragora defcribed by Theophraftus. He does not, however, give his conjectures as facts : he fubmits them with mo-
defty
defty to the judgment and decifion of the learned.

His reafoning is as follows: Theophraftus is the firlt of the ancients who has written of plants. This author defcribes a mandragora that is unknown to us. It is certain, that he was unacquainted with ours, at leaft, under the name of mandragora; whence we may conclude, that the fpecies mentioned by Theophraftus is loft, and that another has been fubftituted in its ftead. It is eafy to explain how the mandragora of the ancients might have been loft. Firf, it muft undoubtedly have been in great requeft formerly, on account of its fingular properties, of which all the ancient books fpeak; fecondly, the difficulty attending the propagation of this plant mult have rendered it fcarce; and it is probable that it was found only in forefts. The country being afterwards cleared from wood, and the roots of the mandragora having been torn up before its feeds came to maturity, the plant in a little time might have been gradually loft. We may conjecture that this will be the cafe with gin-feng, as it is very valuable, propagates flowly, and grows only in fhady forefts.

The mandragora of the ancients having been thus loft, another plant may have been fubfi$\mathbf{N n}_{2}$ tuted

548 General description
tuted for it, on account of fome propèties common to both. Our mandrake has a root in fome refpects refembling the body of a man from the middle downwards; its feeds are white, and fhaped like a fmall kidney; and this perhaps is all that it has in common with the mandragora of the ancients; but all thefe external properties are to be found in gin-feng. The ancient mandragora, however, had cer:ain peculiar properties, which diftinguifhed it from every other plant. To judge whether they have any affinity to thofe of the gin-fong, we muft collect together what Theopiriaflus fays of it.

Firft, Theophraftus fays, that the mandragora has a flem; and he eftablifhes fome refemblance between it and the ferula, on which he beflows thefe two qualities: It produces only one ftem; and this fem Jprings up, and decays eveay year. But what Theophrdfus fays of the mandragora and ferula is applicable alfo to zinfeng, which has only one ftem, that grows and decays in the fame year. This property does not agree with the two fpecies of folanum.furiofum, or letbale, which produce ten or twelve ftems from one root. Thus the opinion of al- ${ }_{2}$ moft all botanifts who believe thefe fpecies of folanum, and particularly that to which the Ita.
lians
łians have given the name of bella donna, to be the mandragora of Theophraftus, is here confuted by Theophraftus himfelf.

Secondly, Theophraftus fays, that, The fruit of the mandragora bave thefe properties-they are black, grow like grapes, and bave a vinoustafte.

It is true, that the fruit of the gin-feng have a beautiful red colour when ripe: but when they dry on the plant, they become fo black, that one can fcarcely perceive that they have ever been red. This is the cafe with other plants the fruit of which affume different colours in fucceffion.

If we confider the fruit of gin-feng, or the umbrella that bears them, we fhall find that comparing them to a clufter of grapes is perfectly juft, and that the fame comparifon is equally applicable to the fruit of both fpecies of folanum, one of which, the garden nigbtfoade, produces an umbrella, or clufter, like that of ivy; and the other produces only one grain, which is called faba inverfa.

A vinous tafte is peculiar to feveral plants that bear berries; the gin-feng is, one of them; the juice which flows from its fruir, when preffed in the mouth, has great affinity in tafte to that of its roots and flowers.
$\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{n}} 3$
Thirdly,

550 GENERAL DESCRIPTION
Thirdly, Theophraftus relates the fuperftitious ceremonies practifed by the ancients when they gathered mandragora. F. Laftau fays, the Indians alfo make fpeeches to their medicinal herbs, and that they ufe a great many ceremonies when they fet out to collect them.

Fourthly, Theophraftus afcribes to his mandragora the following virtues: ' Its leaves,' Cays he, ' when kneaded with meal, heal ulcers; ' its root, fcraped and foaked in vinegar, is ' good for the eryfipelas, for all fluxions of the ' gout, and to procure fleep. It is adminiftered ' either in vinegar or wine.' He adds, that the manner of preferving it is to cut it into lices, which muft be ftrung like beads, and fufpended in the finoke.

All thefe effects of the mandragora will be found to have great affinity to thofe of gin-feng, if they be compared with what we have faid refpecting the qualities of that plant.

When Theophraftus affures us that the mandragora is good for procuring fleep, he fays nothing but what is known by many experiments to be a property of gin-feng; but gin-feng does not produce this effect by a cold, ftupefying, narcotic quality, but by removing the caufes which prevent feep.

## THE FOU-ILN.

WE muft not confound this plant with the tou-fou-lin, or what is commonly called in Europe Cbina root. The latter is very common in China, and is fold at a moderate price; whereas fou-lin is exceedingly dear, and holds a diftinguifhed rank among the medicinal plants which grow in that country.

The Chinefe Herbal, defcribing the fou-lin, gives it neither ftem, leaves nor flowers; from which we are inclined to think that it is a kind of mufhroom. The beft roots of the fou-lin were found in the province of Chen-fic but fome fuperior have been fince difcovered in the province of Yun-nan, which are the only kind fent to court, where they are fold at a tael the pound. This root grows alfo in the province of Tche-kiang, and is ufed in the fouthern provinces. This fou-lin is much cheaper; but it is nowife to be compared to that of the province of Yun-nan. A phyfician, one of the literati, has remarked, that the fou-lin of Tche-kiang, being foft and fpongy, and having lefs ftrength and fubftance than that of .Yun-nan, cannot ftand the fharp, nitrous air of Pe-king: on the contrary, the fou-lin of the provinces of Yun$\mathrm{Nn}_{4}$
nay
$55^{2}$ Ceneral description
nan and Chen-fil has few pores, and is very folid and weighty.

The fou-lin grows always in the neighbourhood of pines, at the diftance of abcut two yards from the largeft trees; but, in order to find it, the earth fometimes muft be dug up to the depth of fix or freen fcet. The Chinefe pretend that a delicate vapour exhales from the fpot where this root is inclofed, which does not efcape the cye of the experienced botanift. Good fou-lin remains in the earth without rotting; and without being hurt by worms; 'and the longer it has continued there, its fubftarce is fo much the more perfcct. F. d'Lntrecolles fpeaks thus of this root in one of his letters: 'The - Chinefe Herbal,' fays he, ' affures us, that ' good fou-lin is found in the earth, on the ' mountains, or in vallcys near which old pines ' have been cut down; that it is from the fubtle ' and fpirituous fubftance which flies off from ' thefe pines, and which is difperfed through' out the foil, that it is formed, and receives its ' nourifhment: whence I apprehend that the ' fou-lin may fpring up in the fame manner as ' fome kinds of mufhrooms, which do not ad' here to the earth by any vifible root. Perhaps ' the fou-lin is a fpecics of fungus from the large
${ }^{6}$ roots of pines that have been cut down; the ' nutritive juices of which, being kept back, ' are collected together, and produce this fub' ftance, which is at firft foft, and more or lefs

- fpongy in proportion to the refinous quality * of the pine. The fou-lin which I have had in ' my hands appeared to me never to have had ' any roots by which it adhered to thofe of ' the pine; and no mention is made of them in ' any book: but if it attaches itfelf ftrongly to ' the roots of the pine, we may confider it as - a mifletoe peculiar to thefe roots, efpecially as ' the pine often has on its trunk a kind of mofs, ' united to it by no fibre, although it derives ' its nourifhment from it. A phyfician,' adds this millionaty, ' having affured me that fou-lin ' was planted and raifed by culture, I at firit ' thought that I had been deceived in my con* jectures, when I claffed it with the fungi; but ' when he added, that he believed it had neither
' ftem nor leaves when planted, I recurred to ' my former opinion; for, having read in the ' dictionary of our academy, that there are ' places where fmall mulhrooms are tranf' planted, in order that they may grow larger, * and that, when tranfplanted, they fhoot forth
- neither ftem, branches nor leaves, it appeared

554 GENERAL DESCRIPTION ' to me, that this might be the cafe with the ' fou-lin which is tranfplanted and cultivated.'

When the fou-lin is to be ufed, it is prepared by fripping off its rind, which has no virtue, and by boiling the remaining fubftance for a few feconds. The properties attributed to this root by the Ċhinefe phyficians are very numerous: it is mild and temperate in its operation, it contains nothing hurtful, and has no need of any corrective. They recommend it as of great fervice in difeafes of the liver and breaft, for the afthma, dropfy, fuppreffion of urine, for flatulencies, and for diffolving phlegm. They affure us alfo, that it fops vomitings, prevents convulfions in children, and that, by ftrengthening the reins, it procures women a fafe and eafy delivery. Thofe who take this medicine are advifed to abftain from vinegar, and every thing acid, during the time they ufe it. As we know that the fou-lin grows always in the neighbourhood of pines, it might probably be found in Europe, were proper fearcl made for it.
THE TI-HOANG.

THE Chinefe give this name to the root of the large comfrey: the beft is found in the province of Honnom , in the neighbourhood of the
city.

## OF CHINA.

city Hoai-king. The roots of this plant, when dried, are of the fize of one's finger, but much longer. The Chinefe phyficians afcribe to thefe roots a great number of falutary properties; and the ufe of them has become very common in all the provinces. Rich people who are careful of their health take pills of ti-boang every morning, as people in Europe drink tea, coffee and chocolate. Some cut it into thin flices, and ufe it in decoction, or when baked in the feam of boiling water : others pound it, and form it into bolufes, which they fwallow with warm water. Five other kinds of plants, or ingredients, are commonly added to it, which are aromatic, cordial, diuretic, acid and a little foporific; but the ti-boang is always the bafis of thefe pills.

## PLANTS WANTING IN CHINA.

IF the vaft empire of China contains a multitude of fimples and medicinal plants unknown in Europe, there are alfo feveral common in Europe which are not to be found in China. The emperor Kang-bi, who knew the good effects of the theriaca of Ardromache, was defirous one day to have this compofition made in his palace: on that account, it was neceffary
to fearch for vipers, and fome plants which were not to be had in the fhops and ftorehoufes in Pe-king, and, among others, for mafter-wort and gentian. The emperor appointed for this purpofe feveral European miffonaries, all of different nations; to thefe he added the mof fkilful of the Chinefe botanifls, and ordered fome mandarins to conduct them to the neighbouring mountains, to the banks of rivers, and other places where it was probable they would find the plants they wanted; but all their refearches were fruitlefs: they did not even find vipers. The fame Kang-hi was extremely defirous that a confection of kermes might be made in China, like that ufed in Europe, as it had given him frequent relief in palpitations of the heart, to which he was fubject. He ordered kermes to be`fought for throughout every province of the empire, and even in Tartary; but none of the botanifts were able to difcover them, Shrubs with red fruit were brought from all quarters; but none of them was that which produces kermes. 'I have attended,' fays F. Parennin, ' the emperor of' - China, for eighteen years, in all his journies - into Tartary; I have had fucceffively for my ' companions M. Bourghefe, phyfician to the ' deceafed
' deceared Cardinal de Tournon, Fathers Frapi' pere, Rhodes, Parmenio, Cofta, Rouffet, all ' Jefuits of different nations, fome of them fur6geons, and others apothecaries; and, laft of ' all, the Sieur Gagliardi, furgenn to the hofpital ' of Saint Efprit at Rome. In all thefe jour' nies, we never found any thing but what is ' to be met with in other places; fuch as very - beautiful angelica, although it was not culti' vated ; the brows of the mountains were co6 vered with white dittany, parfneps, afparagus, 6 wild fennel, celadine, cinque-foil, agrimony,
< pennyroyal, houfe-leeks and plantains, both 6 large and fmall. In the fmall valleys between 6 the hills there are whole forefts of beautiful ${ }^{6}$ artemifium, and wormwood different from ' that of Europe; but fcrn is never feen, except ' on the high mountains. In vain did we feek ' for gentian, mafter-wort, juniper and the ' afh-tree : we found nothing that had the leaft ${ }^{6}$ refemblance to them. I have written to our ' miffionaries in the provinces, to fend me - fome ; but they have not been able to find them: ${ }^{6}$ all this, however, does not prove that fuch ' plants do not exift in China, or in Tartary.

- Thefe countries are a world which we have

6 not yet travelled over: but thofe are mif-
' taken

## $55^{8}$ GENERAL DESCRIPTION

6 taken who think that, if there be any of thefe
' plants there, they muft be very rare and un' common.'
NGO-KIA.

WE cannot here omit a celebrated drug called in China $\mathrm{Ng} 0-\mathrm{kia}$, the compofition of which will no doubt appear as fingular as the numerous properties afcribed to it. In the province of Cban-tong, near Ngo-bien, a city of the third clafs, is a well, formed by nature, which is reckoned to be feventy feet in depth, and which has a communication, as the Chinefe fay, with fome fubterranean lake, or other large refervoir. The water drawn from it is exceedingly clear, and much heavier than common; and if it be mixed with muddy water, it purifies it, and renders it limpid, by precipitating all its impurities to the bottom of the veffel. This water is employed in making the ngo-kia, which is nothing elfe but a kind of glue procured from the fkin of a black afs.

The animal is killed and flayed, and the fkin is fteeped for five days in water drawn from this well. At the end of that time, it is taken out to be fcraped and cleaned; it is afterwards cut into fmall pieces, which are boiled over $\%$

## OF CHINA.

559
flow fire, in the fame kind of water, until it is reduced to a jelly, which is ftrained, while warm, through a cloth, to free it from all the grofs matter which could not be melted. When this glue is cool, and has acquired a confiftence, it is formed into fquare cakes, upon which the Chinefe imprint characters and coats of arms, or the figns of their fhops.

This well is the only one of the kind in China; it is always fhut, and fealed by the governor of the place with his own feal, until the cuftomary day of making the emperor's glue. This operation generally lafts from the autumnal harveft till the month of March. During that time, the neighbouring people and merchants treat for the purchafe of the glue with thofe who guard the well, and with the people who make it. The latter manufacture as much of it as they can, on their own account, with this difference, that it is not fo pure, and that they are lefs fcrupulous in examining whether the afs be fat, or of a very black colour: however, all the glue made here is as much efteemed at Peking as that which the mandarins who are on the fpot tranfmit to courr and to their friends.

## 650 General description

As this drug is in the greateft requeft, and as the quantity of it made at Ngo-bien is not fufficient to fupply the whole empire, there are not wanting people who counterfeit it elfewhere, and who manufacture a fpurious kind from the fkins of mules, horfes and camels, and fometimes even from old boots: it is, however, very cafy to diftinguif that which is genuine; it has neither a bad fmell nor a difagrecable tafte when applied to the mouth; it is brittle and friable, and always of a deep-black colour, fometimes inclining to red. The qualities of the counterfeit kind are entirely different ; both its tafte and fimell are difagreeable; and it is vifcous and flabby, even when made of the fkin of a hog, which is that which imitates it beft.

The Chincfe attribute a great number of virtues to this drug. They affure us that it diffolves phlegm, facilitates the play and elafticity of the lungs, gives a free refpiration to thofe who breathe with difficulty; that it comforts the breaft, increafes the blood, fops dyfenteries, provokes urine, and ftrengthens children in the womb. Witheut warranting the truth of all thefe properties, it appears, at leaft, certain, by

$$
\text { O.F CHINA. } \quad 561
$$

the teftimony of the miffionaries, that this drug is ferviccable in all difeafes of the lungs. It is taken with a decoction of fimples, and fometimes in powder, but very feldom.

## C H A P. IX.

```
QUADRUPEDS, BIRDS, BUTTERFLIES AND
    FISHES OF CHINA.
```

THE mountains and vaft forefts of China abound with wild animals of every fpecies; fuch as the rhinoceros, elephants, leopards, tygers, bears, wolves, foxes, buffaloes, camels, horfes, wild mules, \&c. Some beavers, fables and ermines are found in the northern provinces; but the fkins which they furninh are much inferior to thofe procured from Siberia.

Game is very common in China. The fquares of Pe-king, during winter, are filled with different heaps of various kinds of volatile, terreftrial and aquatic animals, hardened by cold, and perfectly fecure againft all corruption. Prodigious quantities of fags, deer, wild boars, goats, elks, hares, rabbits, cats, fquirrels and Vol. I.

O o
wild
wild rats, geefe, ducks, partridges, pheafants and quails are feen there, together with feveral other kinds of game, that are not to be found in Europe.

The Chinefe horfes have neither the ftrength, beauty, nor fwiftnefs of ours; and the inhabitants of the country have not the art of breaking them : they are obliged to caftrate them; and this operation renders them mild and tractable. Thofe intended for military fervice are fo timid, that they betake themfelves to flight as foon as they hear the neighing of the Tartar horfes: befides, as they are not fhod, their hoofs are foon deftroyed; fo that, in fix years, the beft horfe becomes unfit for fervice.

A hind of tyger is feen in China which has a body like a dog, but no tail. 'He is remarkably fwift and ferocious. If any one meets this animal, and, to efcape from his fury, climbs up a tree, he immediately fends forth a loud yell, and 'reveral others arrive, which, all together, dig up the earth round the roots of the tree, and overturn it: but the Chinefe have lately found out a method of deftroying them. A certain númbèr of peóple affern̉ble towards évening, and ráife a circle of ftrong' pales, 'in which they fhut thenifetves up; they‘afterwards
wards imitate the cry of the animal, which attracts all thofe in the neighbourhood; and while thefe ferocious beafts are digging up the earth in order to overturn the palifade, the Chinefe defpatch them with their bows and arrows, without being expofed to danger.

Camels, both wild and domeftic, are found in the north-eaft parts of Chisa. 'The camel,' fays a Chinefe writer, ' in his body, refembles ' a horfe; he has a head like that of a fheep; ${ }^{6}$ his neck is long, and his ears bang down; he ' has three joints in his legs, and two bunches ' of flefh on his back, which form a kind of ${ }^{6}$ faddle; he chews the cud, endures cold with' out pain, and is naturally afraid of exceflive ' heat : hence it happens, that, at the fummer ' folftice, he fheds his hair, and his fkin be' comes entirely naked. He can bear a burden ' of three thoufand Chinefe pounds in weight, ${ }^{6}$ and travel two or three hundred $l y s$ in a day; 6 by natural inftinct, he forefees an approach ${ }^{6}$ ing ftorm of wind, and difcovers fprings hid 6 in the earth : by digging in the place where ' the camel beats with his foot, one is certain ' of finding water below. Scorching winds fre${ }^{6}$ quently arife during fumner, which fuffocate 6 the traveller in an inftant: when the camels

564 GENERAL DESCRIPTION
6 flock together with loud cries, and bury their
' muzzles in the fand, it is a fure fign that this
${ }^{6}$ wind is about to blow. He fleeps without
' touching the earth with his belly. Camels 6 which, when laid down to reft on their c bended legs, leave fpace between their bodies ' and the ground for the light to pafs through, ' are called min-to, or tranfparent camels; and ' thefe are the kind which can perform long c journies. There are others, named fong-kio' to, or wind-footed, on account of their great ' fwiftnefs: they can travel a thoufand lys in ' a day.'

The fat found in the bunches of the wild camels, which is named bunch-oil, is much ufed in the Chinefe medicine.

There are feveral fpecies of apes in China. Thofe named $\mathrm{fin}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{f} \mathrm{in}$, differ from the reft in their fize, which is equal to that of an ordinary man. They walk with facility on their hind legs; and all their actions have a fingular conformity to ours.

The moft beautiful quadruped of China is a ftag, which is never larger or fmaller than one of our middle-fized dogs. The princes and manidarins buy them at an exceffive price, and keep them as curiofities in their gardens. They have
alfo another fpecies, of an enormous fize, which they call the horfe-ftag.

China poffeffes a valuable animal, which is not to be found any where elfe : it is the hiang-tchang-tfe, or $m u / k$-deer. This animal is very common, and is met with, not only in the fouthern provinces, but alfo in thofe which are to the weft of Pc-king: it has no horns; and the colour of its hair approaches near to black, The bag which contains its mufk is formed of a very thin membrane covered with a kind of hair exceedingly fine and foft. The flefh of this deer is well-tafted, and is ferved up at the moft delicate tables. The following extract of a letter, written from Pe-king, by a Jefuit miffionary, will convey a better idea of this fingular animal ;
' To the weft of the city of Pe-king,' fays this miffionary, ' rifes a chain of mountains, in ' the midft of which we have a Chriftian fettle' ment, and a fmall church. Among thefe moun${ }^{6}$ tains are found a kind of mulk-deer. While ' I was engaged in the duties of my miffion, ${ }^{6}$ fome poor inhabitants of the village went ' out to hunt, in hopes that I would purchafe ' their game to carry to Pe-king. They killed 6 two of thefe animals, a male and a female,

566 GENERAL DESCRIPTTON
' which they prefented to me, yet warm and 'bloody. Before we agreed on the price, they 6 alked me if I would take the mufk alfo; G becaule there are forne who, fatisfied with 6 the fleth of the animal, leave the mufk to the ' hunters, who afterwards fell it. As it was the ' mulk that I wanted chiefly, I told them I ' would purchafe the whole animal. They im. 6 niediately took the male, cut off its bag, and 6 tied it at the extremity with a packthread, 6 that the mufk might not evaporate. The 6 animal and mufk colt me only a crown. 6 The mulk is formed in the interior part of * the bag, and adheres to it like a kind of fait. 6 Of this muik there are two kinds; that com' pofed of grains, which is called teu-pan-biang, ' is the moft valuable: the other, named mi-- biang, which is very fine and delicate, is lefs © efteemed. The female produces no mufk; at - leaft, the fubftance which has any appearance 6 of it is entirely void of fmell.

6 The flefh of ferpents is the ufat nourifh6 ment of this animal. Althoughtinefetreptiles * are generally of an enormous fize, the mufkc deer finds no difficulty in killing them; be6 caure, when a ferpent is at a certain diftarree, 6 it is immediately overcome by the effuvia of

$$
\text { OF CHINA. } \quad 567
$$

' its mulk : it is deprived of fenfation, and re' mains without moving. This fact is fo cer' tain, that the peafants who go in queft of ' wood, or to dig coals in the mountains, find ' no better method of guarding themfelves ' againft ferpents, than to carry about them ' fome grains of mufk: they may then, after ${ }^{6}$ dinner, enjoy a fleer in perfect fecurity. If a ' ferpent approaches them, it is fuddenly fun' ned by the odour of the mufk, and becomes ' incapable of advancing any farther.

- What happened when I was returning to ' Pe-king is, in fome manner, a new proof, ' that the flefh of ferpents is the principal food 6 of the mulk-deer. A part of the animal I had ' bought was ferved up for fupper. One of the ' guefts had always fhewn great horror at the 6 fight of a ferpent; and his averfion to this ${ }^{6}$ reptile was fo ftrong, that he could not hear - its name pronounced without the mof violent ${ }^{6}$ agitation. He knew nothing of the manner 6 in which the mulk-deer fed; and I was care' ful not to give him the leaft hint of it ; but ' I watched his looks with great atteption. He
' took fome of the flefla of the animal, with 6 intention of eating; but he had fcarcely put G a bit to his mouth, when he was feized with Ooi ban

568 General description
' an extraordinary naufea, and refufed to touch ' it again. The reft of the company eat heartily, ' and he was the only perfon who fhewed any ' diflike to this kind of food.'

In the thick forefts of 'Tartary, to the north of the great wall, there is found a fpecies of flying for. His wings are only thin membranes, which extend from one foot to another, and reach to his tail. This animal never flies but by darting himfelf from the top of one tree to another, which is lower : he has not the power of raifing himfelf, and of flying as he mounts. A kind of flying rat is alfo feen near Keou-cuci: it is larger than a common rat, and has wings like thofe of the fox already mentioned.

A much more extraordinary rat, called the fen-chou, is found beyond Tai-tong-kiang, upon the coafts of the northern fea, which is almoft always frozen. This animal is fhaped like a rat; but it is as large as an elephant. It inhabits obfcure caverns, and carefully fhuns the light. The ivory it furnifhes is as white as that procured from the elephant ; but it is much eafier to be worked, and never fplits. An ancient Chinefe book, caller Cbin-y-king, fpeaks of this animal in the following words: 'There is, in 6 the northern extremities, amidft the fnow and 6 ice

## OF CHINA.

© ice which cover the country, a chou (a rat) ' which weighs a thoufand pounds: its flefh is ' very good for thofe who are over-heated.' Another kind, of a lefs fize, is alfo mentioned, which is only as large as a buffalo: it burrows in the earth, like the mole, flies from the light, and remains almoft always fhup up in its fubterranean retreats. What we have here related is extracted from a printed collection of obfervations by the celebrated emperor Kang-hi.

China has birds of every fpecies: eagles, fal. cons, pelicans, birds of paradife, fwans, ftorks and paroquets, which are inferior to thofe of the Weft-Indies neither in the variety nor beauty of their plumage, nor in the facility with which they learn to fpeak. But the moft beautiful bird of China, and perhaps of the whole world, is the $k i n-k i$, or golden fowel. The body of this bird is proportioned with wonderful elegance; and the brilliancy of its plumage feems to be the utmoft effort of the pencil of Nature. Nothing can be richer, or more variegated than its colours. The fhades of its wings and tail are a mixture of bright red and yellow, and a beautiful plume waves over its head. The flefh of this bird is more delicate
$57^{\circ}$ GENERAL DESCRIPTION
than that of a pheafant. It is found in the provinces of Se-tchuen, run-nan $^{2}$ and Chen-fi.

The mof lively, courageous and fpirited bird of this country, and that which the Chinefe confider as the king of their birds of prey, is the bai-tfing. It is very rare, and never appears but in the province of Chen- $\sqrt[F]{ }$, and in fome cantons of Tartary. When any perfon catches one of thefe birds, he is obliged to carry it to court, and prefent it to the emperor's fals coners.

The butterflies found on the mountain Le-feou-chan, fituated in the province of Quang- $^{2}$ tong, are fo much prized, that they are fent to court. They are of greater fize than thofe of Europe, and their wings are much broader, Their colours are variegated in an extraordinary manner, and have a furprifing brigbtnefs. Thefe butterflies remain motionlefs on the trees in the day-time, and they fuffer themfelves to be taken without difficulty. In the eveninga they begin to flutter about, almof in the fame manner as hats, which fome of then feem to equal in fize, on account of the extent of their wings. The Chinefe alfo boaft much of the butterflies found on the mountains called $\mathrm{Si}_{-}$
chan,
chan, in the province of Pe-tcheli; but they are fmall, and not fo much valured as thofe of the mountain Lo-feou-cban.

It would be difficult to give an exact hift of the names of all the different kinds of fifh to be found in the lakes, rivers and feas of China. The miffionaries to whom we fre indebted for the greater part of the knowledge we have concerning this empire, have not yet thrown fufficient light upon that branch of natural hiftory. They, however, affure us, that they obferved in China the greater part of the fifhes feen in Europe; fuck as lampreys, carp, pike, foals, falmon, trout, herrings, fturgeon, \&c. The Chinefe highly efteem a firh which thiey call tcho-kia-yu, or the fifb in armour. They give it this name, becaufe its body is defended by tharp feales, ranged in flraight lines, and laid one over the other, like tiles on a roof. The fleih of this fifh is very white, and it tattes almoft like veal. It generally weighs forty pounds. When the weather is fine, they eatch another kind of filh, which is fo extrently white, that it is called the four-ffib. It by, above all, remarkable for its black eqe-baths, which appear as if fet in two $k$ 'a fes of the moft brillant fiver. This filh is found in fach abundance
on the coaft of the province of Kiang-nan, that four hundred pounds weight of them are fometimes taken at one haul with a net.

The coafts of the province of Tche-kiang fwarm with a fpecies of fifh which have a great refemblance to the Newfoundland cod. An incredible, quantity of them is confumed on the fea-coalt of Fo-kien, befides what are falted on the fpot, to be tranfported to the interior parts of the country. What proves that this fifh muft be remarkably plenty, is, that they are fold at a low rate, although the merchants are fuljected to great expence, in going to the places where they purchafe them, They muft firft give money to the mandarin, for permiffion tu carry on this trade; they muft afterwards hire barks, buy the filh as they are taken from the nets, and ftow them in the holds of their veffels, between layers of falt, in the fame manner as herrings are packed into cafks at Dieppe. It is by ufing fuch precaution, that this fifh keeps. Notwithftanding the exceffive heats, it is tranf. ported to the remoteft provinces of the empire,

The miffionaties fpeak of another kind of fifh, the figure of which is as fingular as it is frightful and difgufting. The Chinefe call it bai-feng; it makes one of their commoneft
difhes; and there is fcarcely any entertainment given at which it is not ferved up. It is generally feen floating near the fea-coafts of Cbangtong and Fo-kien. The miffionaries at firt took it for a lump of inanimate matter; bub, having made fome of the boys belonging to their veffel catch it, they perceived that this fhapelefs mafs was a living and organized being. It fwam about.in the tub into which they firf threw it, and lived for a long time. The Chinefe failors told the miffionaries, that this fifh has four eyes and fix feet, and that its fhape is like that of a man's liver; but, notwithftanding all the attention with which they examined it, they could only difcover two places where it appeared to have fight; for it feemed afraid, when any one's hand approached them. If every thing that enables the bai-feng to move is to be confidered as feet, all thofe fmall excrefeences, like buttons, which are difperfed over its body may be accounted as fuch. It has neither mouth nor bones; and it dies on being preffed. This filh is eafily preferved, when put into falt ; it is tranfported in that manner, and fold as a delicacy throughout the whole empire: it was not, however, much relifhed by the miffionaries.

The moft fingular of the Chinefe fifhes is that which the emperor Ken-leng mentions in his poem in praife of Moukden. The Mantchew Tartars call it calfini, and the Chinefe pimou-yu. This animal appears to be only half a finh; it is flat, and has a great refemblance to the fole of a fhoe; its fcales are very fine; its colour is blackifl; it has only one eye, and one of its lides is without either feales or fins. This firh cannot fwim but when it unites itfelf to a companion; and thefe two fifhes joined together feem to form only one.

The Chinefe have a falt-water fin which they call ming-fou-you, that is literally the fifb with a bright belly. It has a round head, and its mouth is like the beak of a falcon. It lade cight legs round its head; but it has ncither fcales, tail, nor bones. The Geography of Moukden adds, that it has two tufts of a beard, which refemble two bunches of cord. During a ftorm, or when the waves are too frong, or too much agitated, it extends its beard, and ufes it as cords, to attach itfelf to the bottom of the fea, or to the rofks. The name nicmeré, which the Mantchew Taxtarssgive it, ignifies a moored bar,k.

The chortititing, or feà-puil, is a rquad finh, fhaped like a rail, and its mouth is in the form
of a fhip's anchor. When it hears a noife, or perceives any one approaching, it hooks itfelf to the bottom of the water, and remains there motionlefs, like a bark at anchor. It is only three inches in length.

The fmall domeftic fifn which the Chinefe call kin-yu, or gold-fif, are generally kept for ornament by great people, in their courts and gardens. They breed them in fmall ponds made for the purpole, in bafons, and even in porcelain veffels. This fifh is no larger than our pilchard. The male is of a bright-red colour from the top of the head to the middle of the body; the reft is of a gold-colour; but it is fo bright and fplendid, that the fineft gilding, according to F. le Comte, cannot approach it. The female is white; but its tail and half of its body refemble the luftre of filver ${ }^{*}$.-Gold-fifh are light and lively; they love to fport on the furface of the water, foon become familiarized, and may even be accuftomed to

* F. Du Halde obferves, that a red and whate colour are not always the diftunguifhing marks of the male and female; but that the females are known by feveral white fpots which are feen round the orifites that ferve them as organs of hearing, and the males, by having thefe fots much bughter.

In warm countries, thefe fifh multiply faft, provided care be taken to collect their fpawn, which floats on the water, and which they almoft entirely devour. This fpawn is put into a particular veffel expofed to the fun, and preferved there until vivified by the heat: goldfifh, howcver, feldom multiply when they are kept in clofe yafes, becaufe they are then too much confined. In order to render them fruitful, they mild be put into refervoirs of confiderable depth, in fome places at leaft, and which are conftantly fupplied with frefh water.

At a cortain time of the year, a prodigious number of ${ }^{-b a r k s}$ may be feen in the great river $\begin{aligned} \text { rang-t } f e-k u n g s, ~ w h i c h ~ g o ~ t h i t h e r ~ t o ~ p u r-~\end{aligned}$ chade the fyawn of thefe fifh. Towards the month of May, the ncighbouring inhabitants fhut up the river in feveral places with mats and hurdles, which occupy an extent of almoft nine or ten leagucs; and they leave only a face in the middle fufficient for the paffage of barks. The fawn of the fifh, which the Cb Sefe can dilìnguifh at firt fight, although a ftranger could perceive no traces of it in the water, is ftopped by thefe hurdles. The water mixed wirh foawn is tlien drafo up, and after it has becn put into large veffels, ${ }^{\text {it }}$ is fold to merrof. F.
chants,

In warm countries, thefe filh multiply faft, provided care be taken to colled their fpawn, which floats on the water, and which they almoit entirely devour. This fpawn is put into a particular velfel expoicd to the fun, and preferved there until winified by the heat: goldfifh, howcver, foldom multiply when they are kept in clote vafes, becaufe they are then too much confied. In order to render them fruitful, they mind be put into refervoirs of confuluable depth, in fome places at kaft, and rich are contanly fupplied with fref water.

At a cectain time of the year, a prodigious number of barks may be feen in the great river Tan $3-t / 6$-kians, which go thither to purchade the fipawn of thefe fifh. Towards the menth of May, the ncighbouring inhabitants fhut up the river in feveral places with mats and hurdes, which occupy an extent of almof nine or ten leagues; and they lave only a face in the middle fufficient for the paffage of barks. The foawn of the fifh, which the Ch Sefe can diftinguin at firft fight, although a ftranger could perceive no traces of it in the water, is ftopped by thefe hurdle: The water mixed wizh fawn is then drawn up, and after it has becn put into large veffels, it is fold to merVor. F .
$\Psi$
chants

578 GEAERAL DESCRIPTION
chants, who tranfport it afterwards to every part of the empire. This water is fold by meafure, and purchafed by thofe who are defirous of focking their ponds and refervoirs with filh.

## S LLIK-INSECTS.

THESE infects, which are different from filk-worms, refemble caterpillars, and are found in great numbers on the trees and in the fields of the province of Chang-tong. They propagate without any care, and feed indifcriminately on the leaves of the mulberry, and on thofe of other trees. They do not fpin their fllk circularly and in the fame manner ras common filk-worms, which form theirs into balls: they -produce it in filaments and long threads, which, being carried away by the wind, are caught by the trees and bufles that grow in the fields. The Chinefe collect thefe threads, and make a kind of ftuff of them, called kien-tcheou, which is much inferior in luftre to thofe manufactured of common filk; one would take it, at firft fight, for coarfe woollen ftuff or drugget : it is, however, much efteemed in China, and fold there fometimes for more than the richeft fattin. This ftuff is clofely weven, it never cuts, lafts very long, wafhes like linen, and, when manuffactured

> OF CHINA.
nufactured with care, is not fufceptible of being fpotted, even with oil. The infects which produce this fingular filk are of two kinds; one are larger and blacker than our filk-worms, and are called tfouen-kien; the other are finaller, and known by the name of tiao-kien. The filk of the firft fpecies of thefe worms is of a reddifh gray; that of the fccond is blacker, and the cloth made of them partakes of both thefe colours.

THE OU-POEY-TSE.
THE Chinefe give this name to a kind of nefts made by certain infects upon the leaves and branches of the tree called yen-fout $t /$ e. Thefe nefts are much ufed in 'dying, and the phyficians employ them for curing many diftempers. Some of thefe nefts were brought to Eyrope, and put into the hands of the celebrated Mr. Geoffroy. After having examined them with the utmoft attention, this learned academician thought he perceived fome conformity in them to thofe excrefcences which grow on the leaves of the elm, and which the vulgar call elm-bladders: he found thefe nefts fo tharp and aftringent to the tafte, that he confidered them as far fuverior to everiy other dpecies of

580 General description galls ufed by the dyers. According to him, they are the ftrongeft aftringents exifting in the vegetable kingdom.

It is certain that there is a great affinity between the ou-poey-tfe and the elm-bladders. The form of both is unequal and irregular ; they are covered on the outfide with a fhort down, which renders them foft to the toreh; within they are full of a whitifh-gray duit, in which may be obferved the dried remains of fmall infects, without difcovering any aperture through which they might have paffed. Thefe nefts, or bladders, harden as they grow old; and their fubftance, which appears refinofs, becomes britule and tranfparent: however, the Chinefe do not confider the ou-poey- $t f$ e, notwithftanding their refemblance to elm-bladders, as excrefcences of the tree $y$ yon-fou-tfe, upon which they are found. They are perfuaded, that infects produce a kind of wax, and conftruct for thernfelves on the branches and leaves of this tree (the fap of which is proper for their nourifh ment) little retreats, where they may wait for the time of their metamorphofs, or, at leaft, depofit in fafety their egys, which compofe that fine duft with which the ou-poey- $t f$ are filled.


## OT CHINA.

but thefe are rare, and are generally produced by a worm of extraordinary flrength, or which has affociated with another, as two filkwworms are fometimes feen thut up in the fame ball. The fmalle ou-poey- $f$ fe are of the fize of a cheftnut ; the greater part of them are round and oblong; but they feldom refemble one another entirelys in their exterior configuration. At firft, they are of a dark green colour, which afterwards changes to yellow; and the hurk, though pretty firm, becomes then very brittle.

The Chinefe peafants collect thefe ou-poey-t $f$ e before the firft hoar-frofts. They take care to kill the worm inclofer in the hufks, and to expofe them, for fome time, to the fteam of boiling water. Without this precaution, the worm might foon break through its weak prifon, which would immediately burft and be ufelefs. The ou-poey-tfe are ufed at Pe-king, for giving paper a durable and deep-black colour ; in the provinces of Kiang-nan and Tche-kiang, where a great deal of beautiful fattin is made, they are employed for dying the filk before it is put on the loom. 'Phe Chinefe literati alfo blacken their beards with, them whep the become white.

582 generat description, \&c.
The medicinal properties of the out-poey-tfe are very numerous. The Chinefe -phyficians introduce them into the compofition of many of their remedies. They recommend them for ftopping bloodings of every kind; they confider them as an excellent fpecific for curing inflammations and ulcers, and forcnunteracting the effects of poifon; and they employ them with fuccefs in the dropfy, phthifis, epilepfy, catarrhs, ficknefs, fluxions of the eyes and ears, and in many other diforders.


[^0]:    * Some of the feeds of thefe melons, brought to Paris in 1778, were fown, the year following, and fucceeded very woll.

[^1]:    * The lys, as we have already faid, is a meafure uled by the Chunefe in eftimating diftances. Two hundred lys make fixty geographical miles, which are equal to one degree.

[^2]:    Z 3
    Licou-

[^3]:    * One of the Chinefe literat, laughed at the calculation of F. Amoot, and affured him, that, inftead of 822,621 , he ought to have reckoned the Chincle milus to be at leaft 2,000,000.

[^4]:    * A kind of punifhment, of which we fhall fpeak hereafter,

[^5]:    Vol. I.

[^6]:    * This Chinefe name fignifies, a plant, which, from being. an berb in fumner, becomes a worm in winter.

[^7]:    * This work is entitled, Anrenitatum Exoticarum Polutico
    

